



Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

Linee guida per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google[™] books

<https://books.google.com>



KAIS. KÖN. HOF



BIBLIOTHEK

20.644-B

ALT-

S.A. 26. D. 21.





20644-B.

OTHER WORKS
PRINTED
FOR THE USE OF THE ABYSSINIAN MISSION.

BY REV. C. W. ISENBERG:

AMHARIC SPELLING BOOK. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

AMHARIC CATECHISM. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

AMHARIC GEOGRAPHY. 8vo. 3s. cloth.

HISTORY OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD, in AMHARIC. 8vo. — PART I.
History of the Old Covenant, to the Destruction of Jerusalem, and the Death
of St. John. — PART II. History of the Church, from the Death of St. John, to
our Times. 8vo. cloth, 16s.

DICTIONARY of the AMHARIC LANGUAGE. 4to. £2.

UNIVERSAL HISTORY in AMHARIC. 8vo. 4s.

VOCABULARY of the DANKALI LANGUAGE. 12mo. 8d.

BY REV. J. L. KRAPP:

ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo.

ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL, Five Chapters, in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo. 6d.

GRAMMATICAL OUTLINE of the GALLA LANGUAGE. 12mo. 8d.

WORKS IN THE PRESS:

BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER for the United Church of England and Ireland,
in AMHARIC, by Rev. C. W. ISENBERG. 8vo.

VOCABULARY of the GALLA LANGUAGE, by Rev. J. L. KRAPP. 12mo.

GRAMMAR
OF THE
AMHARIC LANGUAGE.

BY THE
REV. CHARLES WILLIAM ISENBERG,
AUTHOR OF THE "AMHARIC DICTIONARY,"
AND MISSIONARY OF THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY
IN EAST AFRICA.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY.
—
1842.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY RICHARD WATTS, CROWN COURT, TEMPLE BAR.

PREFACE.

IN presenting this work to the Public, the Author offers his humble thanks to God, for having enabled him to accomplish it. He was aware, when he first set his hand to it, not only of its importance with regard to Abyssinia—its character, religion, history, and destinies—but also of the difficulty of the task which he had undertaken. There was previously no Amharic Grammar extant, except Ludolf's*; which, however it attests the superior talents of its author, considering the circumstances under which it was compiled, is but a feeble aid in the grammatical exhibition of the language. Nor was there any other literary source, on which the Author of this Grammar could draw, except the Amharic Bible, and those Amharic works which he himself had prepared. Under these circumstances, he had very often to feel out his way, by a recollection of the living language, in which he conversed with the Abyssinian people while residing among them. This recollection, however, was kept alive by the Author's having been, without interruption, occupied with the Amharic press, from his arrival in this country from Abyssinia up to this day. The preparation and publication of the Lexicon, immediately preceding his commencement of this Grammar, was peculiarly suited to prepare him for this work; for whilst, on the one hand, it laid open to him the whole of the materials of which that language is composed, as far as they are at present known, it furnished him also with ample opportunities to investigate the grammatical rules by which it is regulated. Every one, who has

* See Preface to my Amharic Dictionary.

a judgment in these matters, will discover, when comparing the Dictionary with the Grammar, that the Author's own knowledge of the language has improved as he has advanced in his editorial labours. But although he is aware of the imperfections of his own works, he feels confident that a diligent study of this Grammar will, under the blessing of the Almighty, materially assist any Student in acquiring an accurate knowledge of the Amharic Language.

Although there is, as yet, no literature in the Amharic Language, its study is of considerable importance to Orientalists. Its Semitic origin cannot be questioned: it is evident in every feature. A little attention to what is said in this Grammar on the Nouns and Verbs, shows that it possesses a vigour and flexibility capable of expressing any idea; and that it may be very useful in throwing light on many subjects of difficulty in the cognate languages, especially the Hebrew, Syriac, and Coptic. Such a language, it is but reasonable to suppose, will be found rich in words. The Dictionary, which gives only those words which we at present possess, contains about 7000; and we may anticipate that a longer and more intimate acquaintance with the people of Abyssinia will furnish us with a great many more, and lead to important results, not only in reference to the Semitic, but also to the African Languages. With the latter the Amharic has much mutual interchange; as the Author has had opportunities to observe, in respect to the languages of the Danakil*, the Somal, the Gallas†, the Argobbans, the natives of Harrar (or Arargê), and those of Garaguê. But the advantages to be derived from the study of this language, which should be accompanied by that of its parent language, the Ethiopic, are not merely of a scientific

* See Dankali Vocabulary.

† See the Rev. J. L. Krapf's Galla Grammar, his Translation of St. Matthew's Gospel, and his Galla Vocabulary.

nature. When the covetous Abyssinian offers his hidden treasures to the speculating European—when he opens his barriers to the travelling naturalist, to explore his Ambas and his K'wallas—when that country, which stands single in the whole history of Eastern Nations, as a Christian State that was not overwhelmed by the sweeping floods of Islamism, attracts different and, in some measure, conflicting interests of religion, philanthropy and politics—the study of the living Abyssinian Languages, among which the Amharic stands foremost, will become indispensable; as is already experienced by those whom various motives induce to travel in Abyssinia.

With regard to the Church Missionary Society, the Author begs to repeat the same expressions of sincere gratitude, respect and solicitude, which he has uttered in the Preface to his Dictionary. Whatever the result of the present movements concerning Abyssinia and its future destinies may be; whether that nation is still to remain in its present uncivilized condition; whether it be doomed to fall a prey to that Spiritual Power which is assiduously endeavouring to regain the influence which it formerly possessed for a time, or whether it will open itself to the sound of the Gospel and its accompanying temporal and eternal blessings, and emerge into the light of truth and civilization; this Society has been the first instrument, in the hand of God, to offer the hand of Christian assistance and fellowship to them. If it pleases God to prosper their labours of love, they will be amply rewarded for all the difficulties and disappointments they have been subjected to, or which may be still awaiting them. May His blessing be upon them!

C. W. ISENBERG.

LONDON, Jan. 4, 1842.

ERRATA.

<i>Page</i>	<i>Line</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>Read</i>	<i>for</i>
18	12	top,	First	Second.
28	11	...	ልቅሶ:	ልቅሳ:
31	12	...	ቀርቀር:	ቀርቀር:
38	4	bottom,	አይሁድ:	አይሁድ:
39	11	...	Form	From.
42	11	...	Twelfth	Eleventh.
48	17	top,	Suffixes	all Suffixes.
53	14	...	መጉተ:	መጉት:
58	13	...	ተሼጠ:	ተሼሐ:
63	8	...	III.	3.
..	9	...	IV.	4.
64	14	...	አሉ:	ኦሉ:
65	23	...	Regular Triliteral	Triliteral.
81	4	...	conjugation	verb.
83	5	bottom,	መናገር:	መናገሩ:
88	8	...	ይሰጣብራሉ:	ይሰጣብራሉ:
..	2	...	ይሰጣብሩ:	ይሰጣብሩ:
90	7	top,	ያደራርግ:	ያደራርግ:
93	17	...	the peculiarities	and the peculiarities.
..	20	...	Radical	Conjugation.
119	10	...	ቪጣችሁ:	ቪጣችሁ:
129	4	...	አለመለመ:	አለምለም:
133	6	...	ከኩብለል:	ከኩብለል:
139	10	...	የሚያህል:	የሚያህል:
145	5	bottom,	ይመግብዋት:	ይመግቡት:
146	11	...	thee	them.
147	10	...	መግብዋችኋል:	መግብዋችል:
...	1	...	chapters	chapter.
149	16	top,	ዝም:	ዘም:
...	26	...	ፈቀቅ:	ፈቀቅ:
150	9	...	"without"	"within."
152	6	...	ለምንድር:	ለመንድር:
158	20	...	ከ—:	ካ—:
168	16	...	ሰደደ:	ለደደ:
174	15	...	show	to show.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION	- - - - -	PAGE 1.
--------------	-----------	---------

PART I. PHONOLOGY.

ON THE SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

CHAP. I. On the Amharic Alphabet	- - - - -	3
CHAP. II. Numerical Order and Names of the Letters	- - - - -	4
CHAP. III. Virtue, Organical Classification, and Pronunciation of the Letters,	- - - - -	6
CHAP. IV. Seven Vocal Orders of the Abyssinian Letters	- - - - -	8
CHAP. V. On Syllabification	- - - - -	11
CHAP. VI. On Accentuation, and Interpunctuation	- - - - -	13
CHAP. VII. Various Changes of Letters:		
1. Addition	- - - - -	16
2. Contraction	- - - - -	16
3. Elision	- - - - -	18
4. Changes produced and undergone by the letter P : and its corresponding Vowels, I and Ê	- - - - -	19
5. Changes produced and undergone by the letter ፱ : and its corresponding Vowels, U and O	- - - - -	20
6. Changes occurring with the Diphthongs	- - - - -	21
7. Reduplication of Letters	- - - - -	21
8. Exchange of Letters	- - - - -	21
9. Changes occurring with the Liquid Letters	- - - - -	22
10. Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters	- - - - -	22

PART II. ETYMOLOGY.

ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

Preliminary Remarks	- - - - -	23
CHAP. I. On the Nouns:		
SECT. I. Formation	- - - - -	24
SECT. II. Species	- - - - -	35
SECT. III. Gender	- - - - -	36
SECT. IV. Number	- - - - -	38
SECT. V. Declension	- - - - -	40
CHAP. II. On the Numerals	- - - - -	41

CONTENTS.

CHAP. III. On the Pronouns :

SECT. I. Separable Personal Pronouns	- - - - -	43
SECT. II. Separable Possessive Pronouns	- - - - -	45
SECT. III. Demonstrative Pronouns	- - - - -	45
SECT. IV. Interrogative Pronouns	- - - - -	46
SECT. V. Reflective Pronouns	- - - - -	47
SECT. VI. Separable Distributive Pronoun	- - - - -	47
SECT. VII. Indefinite Pronouns	- - - - -	48
SECT. VIII. Inseparable Pronouns :		
1. Personal Suffixes to Verbs	- - - - -	48
2. Possessive Suffixes to Nouns	- - - - -	49
3. Prefixed Relative Pronouns	- - - - -	50
4. Prefixed Distributive Pronoun	- - - - -	50

CHAP. IV. On the Verbs :

SECT. I. Formation and Quality	- - - - -	50
SECT. II. Various Derivations (Forms or Voices)	- - - - -	52

List of Conjugations (Derivations, Voices) of the Regular and Perfect Triliteral Verb	- - - - -	53
---	-----------	----

Other Classes :

i. Triliterals whose first Radical is a Guttural	- - -	55
ii. Geminant Triliterals	- - -	56
iii. Geminants whose first Radical is a Guttural	- - -	56
iv. Perfect Biliterals	- - -	56
v. Imperfect Biliterals of Prima ħ	- - -	57
vi. Defective Verbs :		
1. Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural at the End	- -	57
2. Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle	- -	58
3. Verbs with an Absorbed P in the Middle	- -	58
4. Verbs with an Absorbed D in the Middle	- -	58
5. Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals, derived from Quadriliterals	- - - - -	58
6. Verbs doubly Imperfect	- - - - -	59
vii. Quadriliteral and Pluriliteral Verbs :		
1. Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals	- - -	59
2. Derivatives from Triliterals, having one Radical doubled and transposed	- - - - -	60
3. Geminants	- - - - -	60
4. Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals	- - -	61

CONTENTS.

SECT. III. Flexion :

I.	Moods - - - - -	61
II.	Tenses - - - - -	62
III.	Number - - - - -	63
IV.	Persons - - - - -	63

SECT. IV. Conjugation :

Auxiliaries	חָא: יִנְזֶ: and יִוֶ: - - - - -	64
-------------	----------------------------------	----

1.	Conjugation of the Perfect and Regular Trilateral Verbs	65
----	---	----

2.	Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of Trilateral Verbs:	
----	---	--

I.	Trilateral Verbs whose first Radical is A (חָ: or וֶ:),	93
II.	Trilateral Geminants - - - - -	96
III.	Geminants whose first Radical is חָ: - - - - -	102

3.	Conjugation of Biliteral Verbs:	
----	---------------------------------	--

I.	Perfect Biliterals - - - - -	104
II.	Imperfect Biliterals <i>primæ radicalis</i> חָ: - - - - -	108

III.	Contracted Biliterals:	
------	------------------------	--

(aa)	With Absorbed Guttural at the End - - - - -	113
(bb)	With Absorbed Guttural in the Middle - - - - -	116
(cc)	With Absorbed פֶ: in the Middle - - - - -	118
(dd)	With Absorbed וֶ: in the middle - - - - -	120

IV.	Doubly Imperfect Biliterals;	
-----	------------------------------	--

(aa)	Doubly Contracted - - - - -	123
(bb)	Beginning with חָ: and terminating with an Absorbed Guttural - - - - -	124
(cc)	Beginning with פֶ:, which absorbs a Guttural, - - - - -	126

4.	Conjugations of Quadriliteral and Pluriliteral Verbs:	
----	---	--

I.	Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals - - - - -	128
II.	Derivates from Trilaterals, having one Radical doubled and transposed - - - - -	131
III.	Geminants - - - - -	132
IV.	Quadrilaterals and Plurilaterals of different Radicals, - - - - -	134

5.	Defective and Anomalous Verbs - - - - -	135
----	---	-----

SECT. V.	Connection of Pronouns with Verbs - - - - -	142
----------	---	-----

CHAP. V.	On the Adverbs - - - - -	148
----------	--------------------------	-----

CHAP. VI.	On the Prepositions - - - - -	153
-----------	-------------------------------	-----

CHAP. VII.	On the Conjunctions - - - - -	158
------------	-------------------------------	-----

CHAP. VIII.	On the Interjections - - - - -	159
-------------	--------------------------------	-----

CONTENTS.

PART III. SYNTAX.

CHAP. I. Nature of Sentences	- - - - -	161
CHAP. II. Subject and Attribute	- - - - -	162
CHAP. III. Uses and Construction of the Noun :		
A. Construction of Substantives with Substantives	- - - - -	164
B. Construction of Adjectives with Substantives	- - - - -	165
C. Number of Nouns	- - - - -	165
D. Cases of Declension	- - - - -	166
CHAP. IV. Degrees of Comparison	- - - - -	170
CHAP. V. On the Numerals	- - - - -	171
CHAP. VI. Syntax of the Separable Pronouns	- - - - -	172
CHAP. VII. On the Affixed Pronouns	- - - - -	173
CHAP. VIII. Construction of the Verb :		
SECT. I. On the Tenses	- - - - -	174
SECT. II. On the Moods	- - - - -	176
SECT. III. Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the Sentence	- - - - -	177
CHAP. IX. Construction of the remaining Parts of Speech	- - - - -	178

PART IV.

1. Conversational Modes of Salutation	- - - - -	179
2. Exercises	- - - - -	183

AMHARIC GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

ON THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE IN GENERAL.

I. **THE Amharic Language** (አምሃርኛ: ቋንቋ::), a grammatical delineation of which the following pages propose to give, is that Abyssinian Dialect, which is spoken by the greater part of the population of Abyssinia: it prevails in all the provinces of Abyssinia lying between the Taccazê and the Abay or Abyssinian Nile, and in the kingdom of Shoa; and enters besides, extensively, into the languages of Argobba and Harrar. Its next cognate dialect is the *Tigrê Language* (ትግርኛ: ቋንቋ::); which is spoken by the inhabitants of Tigrê or the N. E. part of Abyssinia, and has its modifications in the Dumhoeto Dialect at Massowa, and the coast N. of that island, and in the language of Gurâguê. Both the Amharic and the Tigrê Languages are modifications of the Ancient *Ethiopic* or *Gēez* (ልዩነት ግዕዝ:), to which they bear nearly the same relation as some of our Modern European Languages to the Latin; viz. that of origin and derivation. However, the present language of Tigrê has preserved a greater similarity to the Ethiopic, and received much less mixture from other languages than the Amharic; the Amhāra people being of a more changeable character, and having had intercourse with a greater variety of foreign nations than their Tigrê brethren.

II. The denomination "Amharic," which this language has received, is obviously attributable to the province called *Amhāra*, situate between Shoa, Godjam, Bagammeder, Lasta, and Angot. That province, which is now the seat of the Yedjows, Argobbans, and other Galla tribes—who partly speak the Argobba dialect, partly the Galla language—must have been considered the chief province of Abyssinia at the time the language obtained that name: for not only have all the countries in which the same language is spoken—excepting Shoa and Efat, i.e. all the N. W.

countries of Abyssinia to the W. of the Taccazê—been called Amhāra, but the natives also frequently apply it to their religion; so that the appellation *Amharic* is used synonymously with *Christian*, although at present the greater part of the population of that province are Mohammedans. But in what the superiority of that province consisted, and the time when it was so pre-eminent, remains still a matter of inquiry: for the reasons which Ludolf assigns, that Amhāra was in the neighbourhood of Shoa, from which the Royal Family of Solomon, which spoke this language, was restored, after the downfall of the Zagæan line; and that Amba Gesheh (better *Gêshê*), where subsequently the Princes of that family were confined, was situate in Amhāra—seem rather unsatisfactory; nor have we at present to offer any thing better in lieu of them.

III. From the fact of the Amharic Language being a descendant of the Ethiopic—which will be evident, from a superficial knowledge of both—it claims the same *affinity to the Semitic family* as its parent; although it has adopted other forms and words from surrounding nations, which bear no relation to that family. A knowledge, therefore, of any of the Semitic Dialects, such as the Hebrew and the Arabic, facilitates, to a great extent, the study of the Amharic. We shall, in the course of this work, have frequent occasions to refer to the Arabic and the Hebrew; although it will be our endeavour also to suit the capacity of those who may have had no opportunity of learning any but European languages.

IV. According to the nature of a Grammar, this work will be arranged under the following heads: 1. *Phonology*; 2. *Etymology*; 3. *Syntax*:—treating, in the First Part, on the Sounds and Letters; in the Second, on the different Parts of Speech; and in the Third, on the Grammatical Construction of Words into Sentences. There is, as yet, no occasion to speak on Amharic Prosody; but instead of this, we shall annex a variety of Amharic expressions, and a few Exercises.

V. ㄗ::	VI. ㄘ::	VII. ㄙ::
Bohemian ě, or iê, as German jeder	Vowelless or short ě, as in since, summer	o usually sharp, as in so, or like wo
ㄗᄆᄆᄆ: hām̄is (fifth)	ㄘᄆᄆᄆ: sād̄is (sixth)	ㄙᄆᄆᄆ: sǎbē' (seventh)
<p>ㄗ: hě (Boh.)</p> <p>ㄗᄆ: lě ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆ: hě ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆ: mē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆ: sē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: rē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: sē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: shē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: k'ē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: bē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: tē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: tshē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: hē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: nē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: gnē ..</p> <p>ㄗᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: ē ..</p>	<p>ㄘ: hě, or h</p> <p>ㄘᄆ: lě .. l</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆ: hě .. h</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆ: mē .. m</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆ: sē .. s</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: rē .. r</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: sē .. s</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: shē .. sh</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: k'ē .. k'</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: bē .. b</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: tē .. t</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: tsh̃ .. tsh</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: hē .. h</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: nē .. n</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: gnē .. gn</p> <p>ㄘᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: ē</p>	<p>ㄙ: ho or hwo</p> <p>ㄙᄆ: lo .. lūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆ: ho .. hwo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆ: mo .. mūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆ: so .. sūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: ro .. rūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: so .. sūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: sho .. shūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: k'o .. k'ūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: bo .. būo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: toe .. tūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: tsho .. tshūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: ho .. hūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: no .. nūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: gno .. gnūo</p> <p>ㄙᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ: o .. ūo</p>

PART I.—PHONOLOGY.

ON THE

SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE.

CHAP. I.

ON THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

THE Amharic Language is written with the same letters as the Ethiopic; each letter varying in seven different forms, in order to express different sounds; Vowels and Consonants not being separated. But besides the Twenty-six Ethiopic, the Amharic Language has seven peculiar Orders of Letters, which serve to express sounds not existing in the former: they are the following:

ሸ:	ሸ:	ሸ:	ሸ:	ሸ:	ሸ:	ሸ:
ቸ:	ቸ:	ቸ:	ቸ:	ቸ:	ቸ:	ቸ:
፸:	፸:	፸:	፸:	፸:	፸:	፸:
ኸ:	ኸ:	ኸ:	ኸ:	ኸ:	ኸ:	ኸ:
ዸ:	ዸ:	ዸ:	ዸ:	ዸ:	ዸ:	ዸ:
፻:	፻:	፻:	፻:	፻:	፻:	፻:
፺:	፺:	፺:	፺:	፺:	፺:	፺:

These, added to the 26 Ethiopic orders, give to the Amharic Alphabet the number of 33 orders of letters; that is, each order consisting of 7 forms or characters, 231 different characters. Add to these the 4 times 5, i.e. 20 Diphthongs, you have 251; which, to commit to memory, call for the close application of the student. The Alphabetical Table opposite embodies them all; giving a correct exhibition of the numerical arrangement of the letters, with their names and value; and the phonical order, power, and Ethiopical designation of the seven different orders, with the pronunciation affixed in English to each character.

The Abyssinian Ciphers are as follow:

፩: 1. ፪: 2. ፫: 3. ፬: 4. ፭: 5. ፮: 6. ፯: 7. ፰: 8. ፱: 9. ፲: 10.
 ፳: 11. ፴: 12. ፵: 13. ፶: 14. ፷: 15. ፸: 16. ፹: 17. ፺: 18. ፻: 19. ፺፻: 20.
 ፺፻: 30. ፻፻: 40. ፻፻: 50. ፻፻: 60. ፻፻: 70. ፻፻: 80. ፻፻: 90. ፻፻: 100.
 ፻፻: 200. ፻፻: 1000. ፻፻: 2000. ፻፻: or ፻፻: 10000. ፻፻: 100000.

feminine gender. A short analysis of these names, as far as it can be given, will establish this statement.

1. **ሀ**: Hoï, **ሀይ**: for **ሃይ**: or **ሃዊ**: the *h* letter.
2. **ለ**: Lāwī, **ለዊ**: the *l* letter.
3. **ሐ**: Hāūt, **ሐውት**: (f.) for **ሐዊት**: the *h* letter.
4. **መ**: Māi, **ማይ**: for **ማዊ**: the *m* letter.
5. **ሠ**: Sāūt, **ሠውት**: for **ሠዊት**: (fem.) the *s* letter.
7. **ሰ**: Sāt, **ሰት**: for **ሰዊት**: the *s* letter.
8. **ሸ**: Shāt, **ሸት**: for **ሸዊት** ::
11. **ተ**: Tāwī, **ተዊ** ::
12. **ጥ**: Tshāwī, **ጥዊ** ::
19. **ወ**: Wāwī, **ወዊ** ::
21. **ዘ**: Zāi, **ዘይ**: for **ዘዊ** ::
22. **ዝ**: Zāi (French *j*), **ዝይ**: for **ዝዊ** ::
27. **ጠ**: Tāit, **ጠይት**: for **ጠዊት** ::
28. **ጨ**: Tsh'āit, **ጨይት**: for **ጨዊት** ::
29. **ጰ**: P'āit, **ጰይት**: for **ጰዊት** ::

The following names are derived from the cognate Semitic Dialects, probably from the Hebrew, since they have the names of the Hebrew letters in the Psalms:

6.	ረ :	Rē-ēs,	ረዕስ :	Heb.	ך	Rēsh.
9.	ቀ :	Kāf,	ቀፍ :	..	ק	Kof.
10.	በ :	Bēt,	በት :	..	ב	Bēt.
16.	አ :	Alf,	አልፍ :	..	א	Alef.
17.	ከ :	Kāf,	ከፍ :	..	כ	Kāf.
20.	ዐ :	Āin,	ዐይን :	..	ע	Āin.
26.	ገ :	Geml,	ገምል :	..	ג	Gimel.

With regard to their significations, the student is referred to the Hebrew Lexicon.

Concerning the rest, the signification of which is not so clear, we leave them for the amusement of such as will take the trouble of searching in the *Ethiopic and the cognate dialects*.

fourth class: it is a sudden explosion of breath from the palate, after the latter has been spasmodically contracted. We have endeavoured to represent this pronunciation, after the example of Ludolf, by writing **K'**, but it must be heard before it can be conceived. This pronunciation, however, is not uniform, although general. In Tigrê, it is besides often pronounced like the Arabic ك, often like ق; in Shoa generally, like a mere Spiritus lenis ('), similar to the ق as pronounced by common people in Egypt. Thus the word **ṬḤḤḤ** is pronounced in three or four different ways: in good language, Tāk'ab'bālā; in Tigrê, Tāghāb'bālā (تَغَبَّل) and Tākab'bālā (تَقَبَّل); and in Shoa, Tā-āb'bālā.

Ḥ: sounds like our *k*, or *c* before consonants.

P: is pronounced like *y* as consonant, or like the German *j* &c.

Ḡ: is pronounced like our *g* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and before consonants.

C. The *Linguals* and *Dentals*:

Ḍ: like our *l*.

W: and **Ḥ**: may originally (perhaps answering ص and س, *Ṣ* and *Ṣ*) have sounded differently from each other: at present, they are pronounced alike, sounding like our *s*.

Ḍ: sounds like our *r*.

Ḥ: formed in the Amharic by the accession of the *ī* sound to the **Ḥ**: and **W**:, is the same as ش, *Ṣ*, and *sh*.

Ṭ: is pronounced like ت, *Ṭ*, and *t*.

Ṭ: formed by combining a soft sibilation with **Ṭ**, sounds like *tsh*, or rather like *t* with a German *j*.

Ḥ: is the same as our *n*.

H: is like *z*.

Ḥ: like the French *j*.

Ḡ: is the same with our *d*.

Ḡ: sounds like the English *j*, or rather like the German *dj*: it is often used to express the Arabic ج.

Ḥ: **Ḥ**: and **Ḡ**: are the same sort of letters in this class as the **Ḥ**: in the Second, which we call Explosive; because they, as it were, explode from between the fore-part of the tongue and the roof of the mouth or the root of the teeth. We have in the Alphabet represented them by writing *t'*, *tsh'*, and *ts'*. But as some more or less hissing seems to accompany this explosion, **Ḥ**: and **Ḡ**: frequently interchange.

Ḥ: is pronounced like *ts*, or the German *z*.

NOTE.—The terms “Consonant” and “Vowel” are not quite suitable to the Abyssinian Alphabet; as the Vowels themselves are but con-sonant, being inexpressible by themselves; and the Consonants being, as appears from the Sixth Order, in form more independent than the Vowels: but to be understood, we must use the expression.

3. The Seven different *Voices* or *Vowels* expressed by these Seven Orders are these:

A. Short *ă*, as in *fat, lad, &c.*; answering the Fat-ha (ـَ) in the Arabic, and the Patach (ַ) in the Hebrew. Like the former, it is modifiable, approaching the *ě* sound, or the short Hebrew Segol (ֶ).

B. *û*, as in *full, put, lucid*; or *ô*, as in *move*; or *oo*, as in *fool, &c.*

C. *î*, as in *pin, finger, hinder*; or *ee*, as in *bee, see*; or *ea*, as in *read, sea*; or *e*, as in *scene*.

D. *â*, as in *far, father, rather*.

E. *ë* or *ê*; a sharp *ê*, with a slight *î* sound before it, as in the Slavonian Dialects; as the German *je*, “ever,” or the English *yea*.

F. *ě* or *ÿ*, as in *liv-er, ber-ry*. This order also is often mute or vowel-less, as in the English and French Languages the mute *ë*. In fact, it completely resembles the Shwa simplex (ְ) of the Hebrew Language.

G. *ó*, generally sharp, as in *so*; or with *w* before it, as in *woe, wonder*.

4. In order to express these seven sounds by each letter, the Abyssinians have adopted the following plan:

A. The *Original Form* is used for the expression of the *First Vowel* (*ă*). It therefore is called, with its Ethiopic name, **ጐዝ**: *Gě-ěz*, which signifies “original”; and is therefore applied to the Ethiopic Language in general (**ፊደል ጐዝ**), in order to distinguish it from any translation. In reference to the letter forms, it means the original, simple, unaltered form, **ሀ**: **ለ**: **ሐ**: &c.

B. The *Second Vowel* (*û*), which is called **ካዕብ**: *Kā-ëb*, i.e. “altered,” “second,” is expressed by the affixion of a point (·) to the right-hand side of the letter, generally in the middle (**ሁ**: **ቁ**: **ሙ**: **ኡ**:); in four instances at the bottom (**ረ**: **ወ**: **ደ**: **ጀ**:); and in one instance, under the letter (**ኧ**:).

C. The *Third Vowel* (*î*), which is called **ሣልስ**: *Sälës*, i.e. “third,” is generally represented by a similar point annexed to the foot of the letter on the right side, and below the line, (**ላ**: **ባ**: **ኣ**: **ከ**: **ደ**:). Where the original has no foot (i.e. line going downwards), a foot is formed; and in

CHAP. V.

ON SYLLABIFICATION.

1. In the Abyssinian Languages, each letter, being Consonant and Vowel in the same figure, is able to constitute a *Syllable*; e.g. ነገ: nă-gă-ră; ነፋቂ: nă-fa-k'ê. Such syllables, formed by single letters, we may call *simple* or *open syllables*.

2. But although this is the case, they *can* combine two or three letters (not more) together, to form one syllable; which will be called, if consisting of two letters, a *closed*; if of three, a *compound* syllable. Thus, e.g. ቃል: k'āl, "word," is closed; ሕዝብ: hēzb, "people," is compound.

3. This is performed with the assistance of the Sixth Order; the vowel of which being short, and rather a semi-vowel, or the same thing as the Hebrew Shwā (וְ), is liable to become *mute*. Whenever this occurs, its letter must be added either to the preceding or to the following letter, in order to be pronouncible; e.g. ገር: gǎ-r, "meek." ብልሃት: bēl-hā-t, "dexterity."

4. The question then is, *When is the letter of the Sixth Order mute or vowel-less?* A few general rules, which will answer it, shall be laid down here.

A. Letters of the Sixth Order are MUTE at the end of words generally; e.g. ሀር: hār, "silk"; ቃል: k'āl, "word"; ነገር: năgār, "word," "thing"; ሀሳይ: tsa-hāy, "sun"; ዓለም: ā-lam, "world."

NOTE.—Seeming deviations, but no real ones, are those Ethiopic words which in the Amharic have been abbreviated: in such instances, the final letter of this form is not vowelless, reminding of the guttural letter, which is no longer written, but still pronounced:

ሰም: sā-mē, "wax." Eth. ሰምዕ::

ብር: bē-rē, "pencil." Eth. ብርዕ::

እንጀ: en-djy, "but." Eth. እንጀዳ::

A real exception is this, which occurs in Feminine terminations of Pronouns or Verbs, in the Second Person Singular of the Feminine Gender, which are sometimes written in the third, sometimes in the sixth form, and may be pronounced or not; e.g. እንኝ: better እንኝ: an-tshy, "thou (female)!" ቀጀ: or ቀጀ: k'ā-dj, or k'ā-djy, "draw (thou female)!"

B. The same letters remain MUTE, when the words to which they belong, receive such additions at the end, by which their form is not changed: e.g. ጥር: tshār, "kind." ጥርነት: tshār-nāt, "kindness." ባል: bā-l, "husband," "owner." ባልተት: bāl-têt, "widow."

NOTE.—An exception is ቃልቻ: k'ā-lē-tshā, "sorcerer," "soothsayer."

C. When two letters of this order meet together at the end of a vowel, both are mute, unless want of organic affinity, or gemination, prevents their being so; but when such a word is augmented at the end, the last letter of this order is sounded:

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) ደርቅ : dǎ-rk', "dry." | ለምጽ : lǎ-mts', "leprosy." |
| መርዝ : mǎ-rz, "poison." | ቀንድ : k'ǎ-nd, "horn." |
| ዓይን : ā-ÿn, "eye." | |
| (b) ልግም : lě-gēm, "superficiality." | ገብዝ : gě-běz, "hypocrite." |
| አቅም : ǎ-k'ēm, "measure." | አጭር : ǎ-tsh'yr, "short." |
| (c) ስምም : sě-mēm, "harmony." | አልል : ǎ-lǎl, "huzzah!" |
| ክትት : kě-tět, "perfection," "fulness." | |
| (d) ቅድስት : k'ěd-sě-nā, "holiness." | ዝምድና : zēm-dě-nā, "relationship." |

D. When a letter of the sixth form commences a word, its vowel is generally sounded:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| ልደት : lě-dǎt, "birth." | ክፋ : kě-fǔ, "bad." |
| ስጠኝ : sě-tǎng, "give me." | ክረምት : kě-rǎmt. |

E. In trilateral words, where all the three letters are of the sixth order, the first is generally sounded; the two following are not:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| ሕዝብ : hě-zb, "people." | ጽድቅ : ts'ě-dk', "righteousness." |
| ድንቅ : dě-nk', "wonder." | ኧርም : ǎ-rm, "a thing prohibited." |
| ርስት : rě-st, "heritage." | ምሽት : mě-sht, "wife." |

F. In trilateral words, where the two first letters are of the sixth order, the first is sounded; the second is not:

- | | |
|--|--|
| ገርማ : gě-r-mā, "majesty." | እንጂ : ǎ-n-djā, "I do not know." |
| ግምጃ : gě-m-djā, "muslin cloth." | |

But in many cases the second letter also is sounded:

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| ግሥላ : gě-sě-lā, "brown leopard." | ቅምባ : k'ě-mě-shā, "a bit." |
| እጅጌ : ǎ-djě-gē, "sleeve." | |

G. In quadrilateral words, beginning with two letters of the sixth order, and terminating in — **ት**: feminine, the first letter is sounded; the second is mute:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ፍልጠት : fě-l-t'ăt, "megrims." | ፍርሃት : fě-r-hăt, "fear." |
| ንፍገት : ně-f-găt, "avarice." | ንብረት : ně-b-rat, "state." |

H. In quadriliteral feminine adjectives, whose letters are all of this order, the first and second letters are sounded, whilst the rest are mute:

ንጽሕት: nē-ts'ē-ht, "pure."

ቅድስት: k'ē-dē-st, "holy."

ርክስት: rē-kē-st, "impure."

ጽድቅት: ts'ē-dē-k't, "righteous."

I. In quadriliteral words, whose three first letters are of the sixth order, the first and second are generally sounded, whilst the third is mute, unless obviated by Lit. C.:

ንልልተ: ē-lē-l-tā, "the shouting."

ንጽሕፍ: nē-ts'ē-h-nā, "purity."

J. In pluriliterals, beginning with three letters of this order, these are generally formed into one syllable; either the first and third, or the second and third letters being mute:

ክርስቲስ: Krē-s-tos, "Christ."

ፍረምቢያ: frē-m-biā, "breast-bone."

NOTE.—These rules will meet most cases: we refrain from adding more at this place, as it would swell this chapter to too large an extent; while in the further course of the Grammar, especially in those parts which treat on the Pronouns and the Verbs, the rest will be easily deduced.

CHAP. VI.

ON ACCENTUATION, AND POINTS OF DISTINCTION.

I. The Abyssinians have no marks for their accents. Some general Rules for Accentuation are as follow:—

A. In words consisting of long and short syllables (long and short either by the number of letters or by the quantity of vowels), the long syllable generally has the accent:

ጥሬ: tērê, "raw," "genuine."

ገራ: gērā, "left."

በጥ: bāgò, "good."

ንጽ: nētsū, "pure."

ባዶ: bādo, "empty."

ዛሬ: zārê, "to-day."

In these two latter instances, the first syllable has the accent, because the long ā of the fourth order is the longest vowel:

ገዳም: gādām, "convent."

ንፋጽ: nēfāk'ê, "heresy."

ፈቃድ: fāk'ād, "will."

ቅዱስ: k'ēdūs, "holy."

መኖር: mănòr, "the dwelling."

ሆጽም: hodām, "voracious."

መልካም: māl-kām, "good," "beautiful."

ዛምድኛ: zēm'dēnā, "affinity."

B. In Verbs, the radix without affirmatives, as well as with light affirmatives (*affirmativa levia*), has the accent on the antepenultima (on the third syllable from the end):

ነበረ: nābārā, "he was."

ተቀመጠ: tāk'ā'māt'a, "he sat down."

ገለጽሁ: gālats'hū, "I have revealed."

See, however, more under the Verbs.

C. Feminine Adjectives and Substantives of the form ንግሥት: have the accent on the last syllable; e.g. ርግምት: rēgēm't, "cursed."

D. Other Dissyllabic words with short vowels require the accent on penultima:

ልጅት: lēdāt, "birth."

ወምበር: wā'mbār, "a seat," "chair."

ገንዘብ: gā'nzāb, "property."

ደንግል: dēngēl, "virgin."

E. The heavier Suffixes (*suffixa gravia*) and Afformatives require the accent directly to precede them:

ቀምበር: "the yoke."


ቀምበረችን: k'āmbārātshēn, "our yoke."

መልሰ: "he brought back."

መልሰችሁ: mālāsātshēhū, "you brought back."

2. The *Interpunctuation* of the Abyssinians is very simple. A simple colon (:) serves to divide words from words; and a double colon (::) to separate sentences from sentences.

NOTE (a)—The colon, which is to prevent words running together, and thereby creating confusion, was formerly a perpendicular line (|), as is evident from inscriptions found at Axum; but that line has been divided into two points, as it was otherwise liable to have been mistaken for the numeral I (10).

(b) The double colon (::) is, in Abyssinian manuscripts, generally reserved for the end of paragraphs; when five red points are inserted into it in the form of a cross, in this manner, 

EXERCISE FOR READING.

(From "the Church History," p. 223.)

Bāhāwār' yāt	zā'mān	bābētā	Crēs tī yān	ēn dēnh yālātsh
በሐዋርያት:	ዘመን:	በቤተ:	ክርስቲያን:	እንደህ: ያለች:
In the Apostles'	time	in the Church		such
ā'n dē nāt	nā'bārātshēbāt,	hūlātshāū	ā'ndē	sēgā ān' dit
አንድነት:	ነበረች ባት:	ሁላቸው:	አንድ:	ሥጋ: አንድነት:
a union	was in her,	all of them	one	body one
nāfsem	es ki ho'nū dē rās.	Crēs tīyā nātem	hū'lū	ba Cres tòs
ነፍሱም	እነዚህ: ድረረ::	ክርስቲያናትም:	ሁሉ:	በክርስቲስ:
soul and	that they were	the Christians and	all	in Christ

kǎ'to ǎltǎ lǎ' yǔm. hǔlǎ'tshǎũ yǎ A'dǎm' lédjo'tsh ëndǎ
ከተ: **አልተለዩም::** **ሁላቸው:** **የአደም:** **ልጆች:** **እንደ:**
 never were separated. all of them of Adam children as

nǎ'bǎrũ bǎ sǎgǎ, hǔlǎtsh ǎ ūm la rāsǎ'tshǎũ
ነበሩ: **በሥጋ:** **ሁላቸውም:** **ለጌሳቸው:**
 they were after the flesh, all of them and (as left) to themselves

yālǎ Crēs't os yǎt'ǎ'fũ hāt'e-'ān ëndǎ nǎ'bǎrũ en dēh ūm
ያለ: **ክርስቲስ:** **የጠፋ:** **ፆጥኦን:** **እንደ:** **ነበሩ:** **እንደሁም:**
 without Christ lost sinners as they were, so also

bāhǎ'imānot hǔlǎ'tshǎũ bānde Crēs't os dānũ.
በሃይማኖት: **ሁላቸው:** **ባንድ:** **ክርስቲስ:** **ደኑ::**
 by faith all of them through one Christ were they saved.

hǔlǎtsh ǎũm bān dē mats' rāt tāts'ǎ'rũ. bān dē dǎ'mēm
ሁላቸውም: **ባንድ:** **መጽረት:** **ተጸረ::** **ባንድ:** **ደምም:**
 they all and by one calling were called. by one blood and

ts'adǎk'ũ bān dē mǎn'fǎ sēm nǎts'ũ tǎk'ǎ'dāsũm. P'et'ros em
ጸደቁ: **ባንድ:** **መንፈስም:** **ነጹ:** **ተቀደሱም::** **ጴጥሮስም:**
 justified, by one Spirit and purified sanctified and. Peter also

lǎ mǐ yǎ mēm hǔlǎ ǎ lǎ: ǎ lān te yǎ mǎ'n gēs tēnā
ለሚያምን: **ሁሉ:** **አለ::** **እላንት:** **የመንግሥት:**
 to believers all said: You of the kingdom (royalty) and

yǎkēhēnāt wǎ'gǎn nātshēhũ, yǎtāmǎ'rāt'ātshēm
የክህነት: **ወገን:** **ፍቺሁ:** **የተመረጠችም:**
 of the priesthood a people, are, which is elected and

yǎtāk'ǎ'dāsātshēm tē ū' lid, tēg'ǎlt'ũ zānd
የተቀደሱትም: **ትውልድ::** **ትገልጡ:** **ዘንድ:**
 and sanctified a generation, you should manifest that

kātsh'ǎ'lāmā wǎdǎ mǐ yās dānēk'ǎũ wǎdǎ bērhānũ
ከዉለማ: **ወደ:** **ሚያስደንቀው:** **ወደ:** **ብርሃኑ:**
 from darkness unto marvellous unto his light

yǎts'ārǎ'tshēhũ sērǎ.
የጸረችሁን: **ስራ::**
 of Him that hath called you the works.

IN ENGLISH CONSTRUCTION.

"In the time of the Apostles, there was such an union in the Church, that they (the Christians) were all one body and one soul. Christians were never (in no wise) separated in Christ. As all of them were Adam's children, after the flesh, and as in themselves and without Christ they

were lost sinners, so also (now) by faith they were saved through one Christ. They were all called with one calling; justified by one blood; and purified and sanctified by one Spirit. Peter also said to all believers: Ye are a royal and priestly people, a chosen and a sanctified generation, that ye should shew forth the works of Him that hath called you out of darkness unto His marvellous light."

CHAP. VII.

VARIOUS CHANGES OF LETTERS.

In order the better to comprehend the various euphonical changes occurring in the constitution of words in the different parts of speech, it is necessary to point out the rules by which the changes in the letters are regulated.

1. *Addition of Letters.*

Speaking, in the first instance, of the ADDITION of letters to words, we regard them as they are joined either at the beginning, or in the middle, or at the end,—prosthesis, epenthesis, and paragoge.

A. When a word commences with a liquid letter, esp. **ṽ**: or **ḥ**:, the **ḥ**: is often preposed; e.g. **ḥfḥp**: for **fḥp**: Nārēā. The preformative, also, to the First Person Plural of Verbs, in the Present Tense Indicative and Subjunctive, has **ḥṽ**—: for the Ethiopic **ṽ**—:: **ḥṽṣṣḥḥḥḥ**: "we return"; not **ṽṣṣḥḥḥḥ**:: **ḥḥḥ**: for **ḥḥ**: "head." **ḥḥṽ**: for **ḥṽ**: "wet."

B. In the middle and at the end after long vowels, **ṽ**: is inserted or affixed; e.g. **ṽḥḥ**: for **ḥḥ**: "time." **ḥḥḥḥ**: "and the work"; for **ḥḥḥ**::

NOTE.—This euphonical **ṽ**: must not be confounded with the suffixed pronoun **ṽ**:, which only by the context can be distinguished from it.

2. *Contraction of Letters.*

CONTRACTION occurs most frequently to the vocal letters **ḥ**: (**ṽ**:) **ṽ**: and **p**:, besides these to the gutturals **u**: **ḥ**: and **ḥ**:: They answer the **וּ** **הּ** **אֵ** letters of the Hebrew Language, in their becoming quiescent. This is especially the case—

A. In verbs and words derived from them, which, originating in the Ethiopic, on their transition into the Amharic have dropped the gutturals, as not compatible with the character of the latter language. In compensation

for this loss of the consonant, they have retained the vowel, and joined it to the preceding letter :

Amharic.	Ethiopic.	
ማረ:	for ሞሐረ:	"to pity," "have mercy."
ጻፈ:	.. ጸሐፈ:	"to write."
ተማረ:	.. ተመሀረ:	"to learn."
መላ:	.. መልክ:	"to be full," "to fill."
ገባ:	.. ገብክ:	"to enter."
ሰራ:	.. ሰርሐ:	"to work."
ሠራ:	.. ሠርዐ:	"to order," "to constitute."
አፈራ:	.. አፈረዖ:	"to bring forth fruit."
ጽፈኑ:	.. ጽሐፈኑ:	"writing."

B. When a word beginning with **አ**: receives a preformative of the first, fourth, or sixth order, the **አ**—: consonant is dropped, and the vowel absorbed by the preceding letter. If **አ**—: stands in the first order, it changes the preceding short letter to one of the fourth order; if the fourth order precedes, no contraction takes place; if **አ**: is of the sixth order, it sometimes changes the preceding short into a long letter, sometimes it does not at all affect it:

አንገት: "the neck."	ካንገት: "on the neck."
እርዖ: "a swine."	ላርዖ: "to a swine."
አደረገው: "he did it."	ዖደረገው: "he who did it."
አገኘ: "he found."	ተገኘላህ: "thou wilt find."

C. The same change, without loss of consonant, takes place with suffixes commencing with **ā**:

ሰራኙሁ: "your work," from ሰራ: and **ā** ኙሁ::

But when such suffixes are joined to letters ending in **ū** or **o**, these letters are changed into diphthongs:

ሰጠኋት: from ሰጠሁ: and **ā**ት: "I gave her."

When joined to letters of the fifth form, the suffix **ā** assumes the **P**:, as similar to the fifth vowel; and rendering that in the fourth form, deprives the preceding letter of its vowel:

ምሳልዮችን: from ምሳሌ: and **ā**ችን: "our likeness."
በርዖቸው: and በረዖቸው: "their ox."

D. In those verbs which are called *geminant*, the two identical letters,

i.e. second and third radicals, are, in several moods and tenses, contracted into one letter, which letter then is sounded as a double letter:

ቀለለ: "it was light." **ደቀለለ**: for **ደቀልልል**: "it is light."
ሰደደ: "he sent." **የሚሰድድ**: for **የሚሰድድድ**: "he that sends."

NOTE.—The same change takes place in all languages. Cf. in the English: *refer, referring; compel, compelled; man, manned; stir, stirring; stab, stabbed; &c.* In the Hebrew, letters so contracted receive a compensative Dagesh (cf. **הִכָּה**, **הִכָּה**); in the Arabic, a Teshdid (غَنَّ, نَبَّ, حَسَّ). In the Abyssinian Languages they have no mark for this gemination; but in pronouncing the contracted syllable, the voice dwells on it for the same length of time as it would on the non-contracted two syllables.

E. The same change takes place in the conjugations of Verbs ending in **ኝ**: in the Second Person Plural, and in a few other instances; *e.g.*

ሆነ: "We became," for **ሆንኝ**:: **ምነው**: **ማነው**: &c.

3. Elision.

A complete Elision, *i.e.* ejection without compensation, takes place—

A. At the end of certain words, with letters of the sixth order, which are not, or scarcely, pronounced; *e.g.* **ሰም**: for **ሰምዕ**: "wax." **ብር**: for **ብርዕ**: "pencil." **እንደ**: "but," for the Eth. and Tig. **እንደዓ**::

B. With the **P**: Relative Pronoun, and the **P**: of the Genitive Case, when Prepositions are prefixed to or precede the word; *e.g.* **ባየኝ**: **በወንድምህ**: **ቤት**: "In the house of thy brother, which I have seen"; instead of **በየኝ**: **በወንድምህ**: **ቤት**:: **እንደ**: **ተዘዘህ**: instead of **እንደ**: **የተዘዘህ**: "As thou art commanded."

C. With the Preformatives **እ**: and **ት**: in Verbs and verbal derivations, beginning with **እ**: and **ት**:: *e.g.*

እደርጋለሁ: "I do"; **አሠራለሁ**: "I bind"; **አስጽፋለሁ**: "I order to write"; instead of **አደርጋለሁ**: **አሠራለሁ**: and **አስጽፋለሁ**:: **ትቀበላለህ**: "thou receivest"; **ትመታላችሁ**: "you will be beaten"; instead of **ትቀበላለህ**: and **ትመታላችሁ**::

D. The Preformative **ት**:, with the negative **አ**:, is often suppressed before **ተ**: **ኾ**: **ጠ**: **ጨ**: **ደ**: **ጀ**: **ሰ**: **ሸ**: **ጸ**: and **ፀ**:: *e.g.*

አጽፍ: for **አትጽፍ**: "Do not write."

አጠብቅ: "Do not observe"; &c.

NOTE.—To this rule may be reckoned **ድ**: before **ስ**: in one instance: **ስሳ**: instead of **ስድሳ**: "sixty."

4. *Changes produced and suffered by the letter P: and its corresponding vowels I and Ê.*

Some of those changes have been noticed in the preceding. Here is to be added:

A. **P**: of the sixth order, as preformative to Verbs, resolves into the mere vowel *i*, when any letter of the same order is prefixed; *e.g.*

	instead of		instead of
ሊሰራ:	ልደሰራ::	ቢመጣ:	ብደመጣ::
እንደሆን:	እንድደሆን::	ሰመለሰ:	ሰደመለሰ::
ኪገገር:	ክደገገር::	የመፋጠን:	የመደፋጠን::
እስኪወርድ:	እስክደወርድ::	&c.	&c.

B. Under the same circumstances, **P**: not only remains, but, for the sake of assimilation, changes the preceding letter into one of the third order; *e.g.*

ሊያድርግ:: ቢያልቅ:: እንደያወጣ:: &c.

C. The Vowel *I*, when applied, changes the following letters:

ሊ: into **P**:: ሠ: and ሰ: into **፱**:: ተ: into **፲**:: ኘ: into **፶**::
 ዘ: into **ዝ**:: ደ: into **ጀ**:: ጠ: ጸ: and ፀ: into **፬**::

	FOR
ሣደ: "painter"	ሣሊ::
ነጋሽ: "regent"	ነጋሣ::
ምላሽ: "answer"	ምላሰ::
ተመቻለሽ: "thou (f.) wilt be beaten,"	ተመቲአለሽ::
ተደኘለሽ: "thou (f.) wilt be saved,"	ተደኒአለሽ::
ጋዢ: "prince"	ጋዚ::
ወላጅ: "parent"	ወላደ::
ሳጭ: "giver"	ሳጢ::
ቀራጭ: "piece"	ቀራጸ: or ቀራጢ::
ዐጣጭ: "rebel"	ዐጣፃ::

NOTE.—Under the same circumstances, **P**: changes those letters into the fourth order.

D. When words ending in *i* and *é* receive any of the heavy suffixes (*gravia*), or the auxiliary **አለ**: at the end, the third or fifth order is generally changed into the sixth, and **P**: follows:

በረ: "ox." በርዖኛው: and በረዖኛው::
 ጠባቂ: "guardian," "protector." ጠባቂዮችን: "our protector."

ተጠብቅዋለሽ: "thou (*fem.*) observest," for **ተጠብቁ:** አለሽ::

ጠብቁዋለሁ: "I observe," for **ጠብቁ:** አለሁ::

E. When letters of the fifth order are shortened, they are changed into the third; when they are prolonged, they are changed into the fourth; and the original vowel *é* or *i* is represented by **P**::

ሔደ: "he went." Imp. **ሔደ:** go!

ሺጠ: "he sold."

ተሻየጠ: "he bought and sold," "carried on commerce."

5. *Changes produced and suffered by the Letter **፱**: and its corresponding Vowels U and O.*

The letter **፱**: is often contracted into the vowel *o*, and still further into *û*.

A. **፱**: is contracted into *o*. This occurs,

(a) With the second radical in verbs:

ቆመ: for **ቆፀመ::** **ዘረ:** for **ዘፀረ::** **ጸመ:** for **ጸፀመ:**

(b) In substantives:

ስጥወተ: "gift," is contracted into **ስጦተ::**

ኹልወት: "power," into **ኹሉት::**

ሕይወት: "life," into **ሕዮት::**

ጸልወት: "prayer," into **ጸሎት::**

B. **፱**: and *o* are further contracted into *û*.

(a) In the subjunctive, imperative, and constructive in verbs:

ደቆም: "let him stand." **ቆም:** "stand!" **ቆምዋል:** "he is standing."

(b) With the suffixed pronoun 3d person sing. masc., which, to nouns ending in a letter belonging to the sixth order, is attached as *û*; but after a long vowel, and in verbs as **፱**:, except after an *û*, where it is changed for **ት**::

ቤቱ: "his house."

ጌታው: "his master."

ጠበቀው: "he observed it."

መታት: "they beat him."

C. *o* and *û*, when an *ā* is joined to them, change the gutturals and palatals into diphthongs of the fourth order, and put other letters into the sixth order, adding **ዋ**::

ብሉ: "his saying."

ብልዋል: "he is saying."

ሰጠሁ: "I gave."

ሰጠኋቸው: "I gave them."

ሸንገ: "senate."

ሸንጊቸው: "their senate."

D. **ፐ**: having been reduced to the vowel *o* in the radicals of verbs, is restored again when the first radical is amplified:

ተቃፀመ: "he stood against," "resisted," from **ቀመ**: "he stood."

6. *Changes occurring with the Diphthongs.*

Diphthongs of the first order (**ቀ**: **ኡ**: **ከ**: **ጉ**:) are, when lengthened, changed into the fourth (**ቋ**: **ኢ**: **ክ**: **ጊ**:); when shortened, into the sixth (**ቀ**: **ኡ**: **ከ**: **ጉ**:) order:

ቀጠረ: "he counted."

Lengthened

ተቋጠረ: "he made accounts."

Shortened

ይቀጠር: "let him count."

7. *Reduplication of Letters.*

Reduplication of letters takes place in the formation of nouns and verbs, generally with a design of giving intensity to the original meaning of the word, when the second or third radical is repeated:

ተናሽ: "small."

ተናናሽ: "very small."

ተላቅ: "great."

ተላላቅ: "very great."

መለሰ: "he brought back."

ተመለለሰ: "he walked," *i.e.* "went and returned," "went up and down."

ተመለሰሰ: "he returned."

አደረገ: "he did," "performed."

አደረረገ: "a great work."

8. *Exchange of Letters.*

The following letters are frequently changed one for another, as belonging to the same organ, or at least being similar in sound.

A. *Gutturals*.—**ዐ**: for **አ**:: **አ**: for **ሀ**: **ሐ**: and **ኀ**:: **ሀ**: **ሐ**: and **ኀ**: for **ከ**::
They write:

አረፈ: "he rested," for **ዐረፈ**::

አበሻ: "Abyssinia," for **ሐበሻ**::

አዘነ: "he regretted," for **ሐዘነ**::

አፈረ: "he was ashamed," for **ኀፈረ**::

ሆነ: "he became," for **ኀነ**::

ሔደ: "he went," for **ኀደ**::

ኋለ: "behind," for **ኸለ**::

B. *Gutturals and Palatals*.—**ሀ**: **ሐ**: and **ኀ**: for **ከ**: *e.g.*

ኪድኩ: in vulgar language, for **ሔድሁ**: "I go."

ማኸል: and **መኸኸል**: for **መካከል**: "the middle."

C. *Palatals and Dentals*.—**ቀ**: interchanges occasionally with **ጠ**: **፪**: and **ጸ**:: **አንቁት**: for **አንጤት**: "wood."

አስቁንቃኑሁ: for **አስ፪ንቃኑሁ**:: "I will harass them."

Ps. xviii. 38.

D. *Palatals and Dentals*.—ገ: and ጸ: and ጀ:: e.g.

አረጀ: "to be old," for አረገ::

ተገገገ: for ተገጽጽጽ: "to rustle."

E. *Linguals and Dentals*.—ለ: and ነ: ሠ: and ሰ: ተ: and ቸ:
(ዘ: and ዠ::) ዠ: and ጀ: ጠ: and ጸ: ጸ: and ፀ: e.g.

ልጥር: "pound," for ነጥር: ሠመረ: "to please," for ሰመረ:

ምናልባት: "perhaps," for ምናልባት: ተባዛ: "to redeem,"
for ተበጀ:

ቀረጠ: "to cut," for ቀረጸ: ጸብ: "quarrel," for ፀብ:

F. *Linguals and Labials*.—Where ነ: precedes በ: ጸ: and ፈ:, it is, as in the Greek and in other languages, exchanged for መ: a liquid of the same order.

እምበልታ: "flute," for እንብልታ:

ወምፈት: "a sieve," for ወንፈት:

ለንጸኔ: "a small tent," for the Greek λαμπήνη.

G. *Labials*.—መ: and በ: መ: and ወ: በ: and ወ:

ዝፍም: "rain," for ዝፍብ:

ወንበር: and ወምበር: "chair," for መንበር:

ፍረ: "to remain," (the ወ: resolved into the vowel o) from the Eth. ነበረ:

9. As for the liquids ለ: መ: ነ: ረ: and the changes to which they are liable, they having been embodied in the preceding remarks, nothing further remains to be said concerning them.

10. *Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters.*

Takes place merely in low language.

መርባት: "light," "candle," for መብረት:

ቅፍብግ: for ቅባኑግ: "nug-oil."

እዝጊር: for እግዚር: contracted from እግዚአብሔር: "God."

ክሶስ: "Christ." ክስዖን: and ኩስታን: for ክርስቲያን: "Christian."

PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

IN the Semitic Languages, it has been the custom (which also Ludolf has followed, in both his Grammars, of the Ethiopic and of the Amharic Languages) to class the different Parts of Speech under three heads; *viz.* Nouns, Verbs, and Particles; beginning the Etymological part of the Grammar with the Verb, as containing the roots of the whole language. But modern Grammarians have, for important reasons, adopted another course; following the practice of some ancient Arabic and Hebrew Scholars: and as that tripartition presents several inconveniences, especially to such as are unacquainted with the other Semitic Dialects, we divide the Amharic Language into Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs, Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections. None of the Abyssinian Languages possess the Article.

2. It will, in a great measure, facilitate the study of the language, before we enter on each part of speech in particular, to premise a few general observations on the original forms of words; because it is in them, and in the manner in which from them the various formations have proceeded, that the peculiarity of every language consists. We must observe, however, that the Amharic not being an original but a derived language (see Introduction, I. III.), we must have frequent recourse to the Ethiopic; and it presents several formations which, in the present state of its knowledge, cannot yet be accounted for.

3. Now the principal elements—as it were the skeleton—of words in any language, consists in the *Consonants*, which are animated by the different Vowels, according to the purposes of formation, flexion, and dialect: and in speaking therefore of original forms, we must look, not to the Vowels, but to the consonants.* This, when applied to the Amharic, where Vowels are constantly attached to Consonants, signifies that the various orders of a letter do not come into consideration, but the letter itself.

4. One characteristic feature of the Semitic Languages is the prevalence

* This is more clear in the Hebrew, Arabic, and Syriac; in which the Vowels are represented by certain marks above and below the line, which are more frequently omitted than written.

of triliteral forms, which are partly derived from original biliterals, and partly amplified to quadri- and pluri-literals; but, for the greater part, are original, and form the majority. This peculiarity applies also to the Abyssinian Languages; although not to the Amharic with equal force, as to its parent, the Ethiopic.

5. We do not intend to enter into any inquiry about the logical priority of the Parts of Speech; although we believe, that, in the natural development of the mind, the Noun has the precedence before the Verb; but in the grammatical formation of the Amharic Language, the Verb claims the priority, since all its roots are reducible to the first order, called Gēēz; *i.e.* "original." For the sake of convenience, however, we begin with the Noun, and follow the order stated under § 1.

CHAP. I.

ON THE NOUNS.

In speaking of the Nouns, we have to consider them according to their *Formation* (termination, species), *Gender*, *Number*, and *Declension*.

SECTION I.

Formation of Nouns.

1. As to the FORMATION of Nouns, they are either Simple, Augmented, or Compounds; either *Primitive* or *Derived*. Concerning their termination, they may end in any of the seven orders, except the first. We consider them, first, in respect to their *forms*, as simple, augmented, or compound; secondly, to their *formation*, as primitive or derivative.

2. *Simple forms*; consisting of two, three, or four letters.

A. *Biliterals*.

(a) Ending in the second order:

ክፈ: bad.	ብዙ: much.	ሞሉ: full.
ንጹ: clean.	ብሩ: clear.	ጽሩ: pure.
ሠሠ: covetous, a miser.	ሸጥ: spices.	

NOTE.—Most of these forms are Ethiopic Verbal Adjectives, originating from, or rather representing, the Passive Participle.

(b) Ending in the third order, generally signifying an agent:

ሰራ: workman, diligent.	መሪ: guide.	ሰፈ: wide, spacious.
ዘራ: sower, seedsman.	ፈቃ: tanner.	ዘጸ: ebony.
ገባ: the inside.	ገባ: current in trade.	

(c) Ending in the fourth order :

ረሳ: a corpse.	ሞያ: rent, wages.	ሽታ: smell.
በደ: emptiness.	ቤዛ: ransom.	በጋ: summer.
ካሳ: equivalent.	ዋዛ: mockery.	ዋጋ: price.
ገላ: body.	ሽማ: cloth.	ጨማ: sole of the foot.
ጪኛ: betrothed.	ውኃ: water.	ድደ: dumb.
ሊገ: thief.	እቃ: vessel, utensil.	ምሳ: dinner.
ማታ: evening.	ሥጋ: flesh.	ረጫ: course.
ሰራ: work.	ቃራ: knife.	

(d) Ending in the fifth order :

ሉሊ: servant.	ሐዲ: the king's majesty.	ቅኒ: poetry.
መሴ: a certain measure.	ሰኒ: June.	ወረ: news.
ቅቤ: butter, oil.	በረ: ox.	ጦሊ: full-grown elephant.
ደዌ: disease.	ጊዜ: time.	ቋረ: garment.
ጥረ: genuine, original.	ፍረ: fruit.	

(e) Ending in the sixth order. These are the most numerous.

ሀር: silk.	ቀን: day.	ቅን: equity.
ላም: cow.	ሆድ: belly.	ሉል: pearl.
ልክ: measure.	ልብ: heart.	ሕግ: law.
መቅ: warm.	ልጅ: child.	ማር: honey.
ማቅ: coarse woollen cloth.	መዝ: banana.	ሣር: grass.
ረዝ: rice.	ሞት: death.	ስም: name.
ሰው: man.	ራብ: hunger.	ሹም: governor.
	ሴት: woman.	ቁስ: priest.

(f) Ending in the seventh order :

ሚሎ: a fillip.	ደቦ: a sort of bread.	ርገ: curds, cheese.
ደር: hen.	ሢሶ: a third.	ጉዞ: a day's march.
ገጸ: small thatched house.	ጀር: ear.	ኮሶ: cosso (a medicine).
	ቆሎ: fried grain.	

B. *Triliterals.*

(a) Ending in the second order are rare :

ገነኛ: meeting.	ስሙሙ: harmonious.
---------------	------------------

(b) Ending in the third order, the second letter being generally of the

fourth order. The latter, if their first radical is of the first order, are to be considered as Active Substantives or Adjectives; if of the sixth, as Passive.

ለጊሚ : groom.	ለቃሚ : gatherer.	መሐሪ : merciful.
መከሪ : counsellor.	መጋቢ : steward.	ሰካሪ : drunkard.
በራሪ : flying.	ነደቁ : mason.	ነጋሪ : speaker.
ነጣቁ : rapacious.	ተሚሪ : scholar.	አላረ : passenger, passer-by.

To this class also belong those words whose third letter has been changed from the third to the sixth order. **መለሽ**: "the returner," "restorer"; **ምለሽ**: "answer," "return"; **ቀ-ራጭ**: "cutter"; **ቀ-ራጭ**: "a cut," "piece," &c., for **መለሰ**: **ምለሰ**: **ቀ-ራጢ**: **ቀ-ራጢ**:

(c) Ending in the fourth order:

ለመፍ : entreaty.	ልቡፍ : intellect.	መሐላ : oath.
መንጋ : twins.	መራራ : bitter.	መከራ : affliction.
መጻጻ : sour, acid.	መኝጋ : sleeping-place.	ሳምባ : the lungs.
ስፍራ : place.	ሸህላ : potter's earth.	ቅረጋ : remainder.
ባርያ : slave.	ተልባ : linseed.	ነቀጣ : a spot.
አለቃ : a chief.	ከፍጋ : height.	ወርካ : sycamore-tree.

(d) Ending in the fifth order:

ህላፄ : substance, essence.	ፍጻሚ : perfection.	ምሳሌ : similitude.
ሥላሴ : trinity.	ልባቤ : intellect.	ቅደሚ : Saturday.
ቡራኬ : blessing.	ስንጂ : wheat.	ከርቤ : myrrh.
ወጠጢ : young he-goat.	ፍሐሴ : August (month).	ዕድሚ : age.
ጀንጂ : cow's hide.	ዝማረ : song.	ጥያቄ : question.
	ጉማረ : hippopotamus.	

NOTE.—It will be observed, that those Nouns, whose first radical is of the sixth, the second of the fourth, and the third of the fifth order, are generally Abstract Nouns of Quality.

(e) Ending in the sixth order:

α Nouns whose three letters are of the same order, generally denoting essence, quality, action, or concrete substances:

ልብስ : cloth.	ልውጥ : change.	ምንጭ : fountain.
ሕርም : prohibition.	ምርጫ : election.	ሸልፍ : war.
ሥእል : image.	ርኩስ : impure.	ብርድ : coldness.
ሸልም : ornament.	ቅቅል : cookery.	አህል : corn.

ተርፍ: remainder.	ንስር: eagle.	ዝምብ: a fly.
ክምር: a heap.	ዕዕፍ: a fold, time, turn.	ጥልቅ: depth.
ድርቅ: dryness.	ግምብ: tower.	ፅንሰ: pregnancy,
ጭምር: addition.	ጽምድ: a pair.	fœtus.
ፍርድ: judgment.	ልጥር: a pound.	

β Nouns whose first letter is the first, and the second and third of the sixth order, generally denoting qualities, concrete substantives, or adjectives:

ለምድ: hide.	ለምጽ: leprosy.	መልክ: form.
ረጀም: long.	ቀንድ: horn.	በርድ: cold.
በተር: a stick.	ተክል: a plant.	ነምር: leopard.
አተር: lentils.	ከብተ: property.	ወንድ: a male.
ዐምድ: pillar.	ዘውድ: coronet.	ደርቅ: dry land.
ገብስ: barley.	ጸጉር: hair.	ፈተል: thread.

γ Nouns whose first and third letters are of the sixth, and second of the second order. They are of Ethiopic formation, being generally Verbal Adjectives and Substantives, the same as § 2. A. a.

ምወት: dead.	ርቦዕ: fourth.	ቅቦእ: anointed.
ቅደስ: holy.	ብረር: silver.	ተሐት: humble.
ንጉሥ: king.	ንጹሕ: pure.	ንፈግ: avaricious.
እኩል: half, equal.	ወጉዝ: execrated.	ርጉም: cursed.
ዕብድ: proud.	ዕወር: blind.	ግረም: majestic.

δ Nouns whose second letter is of the third order. They are of Ethiopic origin, and generally Adjective.

መረር: bitter.	መጸጽ: sour.	ረቂቅ: thin.
ቀሊል: light.	ከቢድ: heavy.	ዓዚዝ: mighty.
ጠቢብ: wise.	ጸቢብ: narrow.	

To the same class belong those Adjectives whose middle letter has been changed from the third into the sixth order:

ቀጭን: "thin"; አጭር: "short"; ረጀም: long"; instead of ቀጢን: አጸር: ረዛም::

Exceptions are:

ቃሊብ: "mould"; ቀሚስ: "shirt"; ነቢይ: "prophet"; ዘቢብ: "grape"; &c.

ε Nouns whose middle letter is of the fourth order. They are generally Substantives, though sometimes Adjectives.

ልማድ: custom.**ልግብ**: halter.**ልጋም**: reins, bridle.**ሐማም**: disease.**ሐካክ**: itch.**ሐፃን**: infant.**መላስ**: tongue.**መካን**: barren.

ζ Nouns whose middle letter is of the fifth order: **ሰሌን**: **ሐሚት**:
መረት ::

η Nouns whose middle letter is of the seventh order: **አሞት** ::

θ Nouns Verbal, ending in the feminine —ት :: They will be mentioned hereafter, when speaking of Derived Nouns.

(f) Nouns ending in the seventh order. They are all Substantives.

ልቅሳ: lamentation.**ምርኮ**: exile.**ምንቅ**: ague.**ምሰሶ**: a pole.**መሰፍ**: a canal.**ሸሐሶ**: wire.**ቀበር**: jackal.**ቀንጃ**: girl, virgin.**በረደ**: hail.**በፋሉ**: mule.**እርሾ**: leaven.**ከበር**: drum.**ወስፎ**: awl.**ዓውሎ**: tempest.**ዘንጃ**: poisonous**ድርጎ**: a dërgo.**ጎምሶ**: water-jar.

serpent.

ጎርር: throat.

C. *Quadriliterals* :

There are none ending in the second order.

(a) Single Nouns ending in the third order. Such as are derived from any derivation of Verbs are not included here.

ሰብሳቢ: gatherer.**ሰንጣቂ**: a cleaver.**ሰንጣቂ**: a split.**በርገሪ**: a plunderer.

(b) Ending in the fourth order :

መንጋጋ: jaw.**ሠረገላ**: beam, car-**ሸምበራ**: a kind of**ሸንገላ**: deceit.

riage.

pulse.

ደብተራ: a learned
man.**አለንጋ**: a whip.**ኩብኩባ**: grass-**ጉልማሳ**: a young
man.

hopper.

አቆማደ: leather bag.

(c) Ending in the fifth order :

ልምላሚ: verdure.**ማንተል**: a rabbit.**ርንጊጌ**: clemency.**ሸማገሌ**: an elder.**በርበራ**: Cayenne pep-**ትርጓሚ**: translation.**ድብደቤ**: bill of account.

per.

(d) Ending in the sixth order :

ልምለም: green.**መንደር**: village.**ምስኪን**: poor.**ምንዝር**: adultery.**ሠልሰል**: chain.**ረገረገ**: mud.

ስንዝር: a span. **ስፋነግ**: sponge. **ቀምበር**: yoke.
ቅንድብ: eye-brow. **ትንኩል**: shrewdness. **አሸከር**: a youth.
አጠገብ: side. **ድምብር**: frontier. **ድንገል**: virgin.

(e) Ending in the seventh order :

መሰንቆ: a harp. **ቆርቆር**: pewter. **አምልኮ**: religion, god-
ወደዝር: prince, or **ዝንጅር**: monkey. liness.
 princess. **ደንቆር**: stupid.

D. There are not many Simple Nouns of five and more letters: some of those which exist, we will mention here:

ሃረንጊደ: green. **ሐመልማል**: vegetables.
ተንተረሰ: supporter of the head. **ነበልባል**: flame.
እንቅላል: egg. **እንቅልፍ**: sleep.
አውራሪስ: rhinoceros. **ደንገጥር**: chamber-maid.
ዝንጉርጉር: chequered.

3. In speaking of *Augmented Nouns*, we do not refer to those casual additions they receive by inseparable Prepositions at the beginning, or Pronouns at the end; but we speak of those augmentations at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end, by which their original signification is modified. In order, however, not to fall into an unnecessary repetition, we postpone this subject till we come to speak of *Derived Nouns*. (See 5. c.)

4. *Compounds* are formed (a) from the Ethiopic *status constructus*; the *nomen regens* and the *nomen rectum* being combined into one word, as in our "house-door" for "house's door," only the reverse of our order. In the Ethiopic, as in the Hebrew, the word (nominative) which precedes, and which, according to our ideas, should have the nominative form, is changed; and the word (genitive) which follows, and which we should expect to be changed, is not changed at all. As this peculiarity does not affect the Amharic Language any further, we do not enter into it, but content ourselves with giving only a few instances.

Compounds.

ባለቤት: master of the house, self.
ባልንጅራ: fellow, associate.
ቤተሰብ: { domestic, one belonging }
 to a house or family.
ቤተንጉሥ: state-room, parlour.

Analysis.

ባል: master, and **ቤት**: house.
ባል: **እንጅራ**: bread.
ቤት: house . . . { **ሰብ**: Eth. *i.g.* Amh.
 ሰው: man.
ቤት: house . . . **ንጉሥ**: king.

Thus are many Ethiopic words compounded, especially their Christian names; *e.g.* **ንደል**: **ማርያም**: Haila Maryam, "the Power of Mary," commonly Hailu; **ገብረ**: **እግዚአብሔር**: or **ገብረ**: **አምላክ**: Gabra

Egziabêh, or Gabra Amlāk, contr. Gabramlāk, commonly Gabru, or Zäëgziabhêh, or Zäamlāk, "Servant of God," &c.

(b) From Amharic words, combining either noun with noun, or the noun with any other part of speech:

Compounds.

ገራጅ: left-hand.

ገዛጅ: free-will, liberty.

ገደጅ: empty-handed.

ኢረታ: O my Lord!

Analysis.

ገራ: and ገጅ::

ገዛ: (dominion?) & ገጅ: hand.

ገደ: empty, & ገጅ::

የኔ: mine, & ገታ: Lord, master.

5. *Primitive Nouns*, strictly speaking, are those whose origin cannot be traced to any other source but to themselves. Now there are a good number in the Amharic Language which are easily recognised as Primitive in this sense; but there are many others which can be called so only in a relative acceptation of the word, because in the Ethiopic, from whence they are taken, they are not Primitive; although either the original word is not current in the Amharic, or the mode of its derivation is not accordant with the idiom of that language. The first of these two latter clauses induces us to consider a number of Amharic Nouns as comparatively Primitive; whilst the second constrains us to leave to others the same derivative character which they have in the Ethiopic.

As the Primitive Nouns are found only among the *simple* forms, we refer to the above exhibition, N^o. 2.

A. *Biliterals*:

Class (a) is entirely derivative.

Class (b) also.

Class (c) contains a number of Primitives; *e.g.* ረሳ: በደ: ቤዛ: በጋ: ካሳ: ዋጋ: ገላ: ሸማ: ጨማ: ውጋ: ድጋ: ሥጋ: ነጋ: ማጋ: ድደ: ለገ: ቃራ::

(d) *Primitives* of the fourth class: ሉሉ: ሐዲ: መሴ: ሰኔ: ጊዜ: ጦሉ: ቋረ::

(e) In the fifth class, the majority are Primitives.

(f) In the sixth class, ሚሉ: ደር: ጀር: ገጂ: ኮሶ: ደሶ::

B. *Triliteral Primitives*:

In class (c), መንታ: ሳምገ: ሸህላ: ገርያ: ተልገ: ማሸላ: ነቀጣ: ወርካ:

In class (d), ስንደ: ነሐሴ: ሐምሌ: ጀንደ: ከርቤ: ወጠጤ: ሀደሚ: ገማረ:

In class (e), almost the whole of the first (α); about half of the second (β);

ERALS.

ዕሪር: filix mas.
 ሰላል: stairs, ladder.
 ምላክ: God.
 ምሃም: sort of gourds.
 ንካር: nail.
 ልቋል: k'welqu'äl.
 ጎባር: bedstead.
 ስቋል: yolk of an egg.
 ጋዜን: capricorn.
 ለንጅ: small elephants' tusk.
 ሪንጥ: unfermented wine.
 ዑልት: obelisk.
 ጎዝር: adultery.
 ርምር: inquiry.
 ምህም: yellow pigeon.
 ንኩል: shrewdness, craftiness.
 ንቀን: moth.
 ንዝር: span.
 ርኮሽ: back-door.
 ንኮይ: acrimonious fruit.



5. ult. ሆ::

ርከር: a certain quadruped.
 ርከሶ: flat basket.
 ሪዛዛ: sort of beads.
 ምላኮ: tobacco.
 ረንጃ: raw flesh.
 ሰንቆ: harp, lyre.
 ጫምጫ: an anthemintic.
 ርጫቆ: glass.
 ሸቆቆ: kind of marmots.
 ርቆር: pewter.

PLURILITERALS.

1. ult. ሃ::

አርገረሳ: a parasitic plant.
 እንቃቃላ: kind of lizards.
 ፍርምቢያ: breast-bone.
 ሙጭልጭላ: weasel.



2. ult. ሂ::

ሀረንጊደ: green.
 ጉራማይሊ: a certain bird.



3. ult. ሀ::

አምፍዘለብ: saddle's crupper.
 አንከሊስ: measles.
 ቀንጥሪት: a small handful.
 ቀርጭምጭሚት: ankle-bone.
 እንድርማሚት: lap-wing.
 ሶልስዋል: glutton.
 ነበልጣል: flame.
 አምበላይ: white horse.
 እንቀላል: egg.
 እንክርደድ: a weed.
 ሙንከሲን: chin.
 ሙቅለምት: large knife.
 ሰንጠርጅ: game of chess.
 እንቅልፍ: sleep.
 ልክስክስ: light-minded.
 ሙንኩራኩር: carriage.
 ቀንጥርጥር: curled hair.
 እምቢያጉስም: martingal.



4. ult. ሆ::

አብርጣሞ: sort of plaited hair.
 አንባብር: sort of bread.

none of the third (γ); few of the fourth (δ), **ቃሉብ፡ ታሪክ፡ ቀማሽ፡ አሪዝ፡ ነቢይ፡ ዘቢብ፡**, and fifth (ε), **ልባብ፡ ልጊም፡**; but none of the sixth (ζ) division.

In class (f), the greater part are Primitives.

C. *Quadriliteral Primitives*:

(a) None.

(b) **መንጋ፡ ወረገላ፡ ሽምብራ፡ አለጋ፡ ኩብኩባ፡ ደብተራ፡ አቀማ፡**

(c) Few; e.g. **መንተሉ፡ በርበሬ፡**

(d) The majority.

(e) **መሰንቆ፡ ቀርቆር፡ ወይዘር፡ ዝንጀር፡ ደንቆር፡**

D. Those mentioned as simple *pluriliterals* are all Primitive.

6. *Derived Forms* take their origin either from Nouns, Verbs, or Particles; and are formed in various ways, either by *contraction* (elision), or by *change*, or by *augmentation* of their letters.

A. By *Contraction* (see Part I. Ch. VII. 2.), and *Elision* (ibid. 3.), they are changed more seldom within the limits of the Amharic than in their transition from the Ethiopic Language into the Amharic. It takes place most frequently in Biliterals:

Amb.	Eth.	Amb.	Eth.
ንጹ : pure,	from ንጹሕ፡	ምሳ : dinner,	from ምሳሕ፡
በሬ : ox,	.. ብዕራይ፡	ላም : cow,	.. ላህም፡
ማር : honey,	.. መሣር፡	ሣር : grass,	.. ሣዕር፡
ቅቤ : butter, oil,	.. ቅብእ፡	sometimes Amharic.	

Sometimes in Triliterals, derived from the Ethiopic Quadriliterals:

Amb.	Eth.	Amb.	Eth.
ብርቱ : strong,	from ብርቱዕ፡	ስሙሙ : harmonious,	
ባሕሪ : essence,	.. ባሕርይ፡	from ስሙዕሙዕ፡	

B. By *change* of one, two, or of all the primitive letters, according to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 4, 5, 7. A few instances will suffice for illustration:

Derivative.	Primitive.
ቀደም : that which is before,	from ቀድም : the former time.
ቀደሚ : saddle's pommel,	
ቀደሚ : Saturday,	
ቀደሰ : holy,	from ቀደሰ : to sanctify.
ቀደሴ : consecration,	
ቀደሽ : sanctifier,	

Derivative.	Primitive.
መለሽ : a restorer,	} from መለሰ : to return, bring back.
ምለሽ : return, answer,	
ምሳሌ : likeness,	} from መሰለ : to resemble.
ምሳይ : kind, resemblance,	
ንጉሠ : king,	} from ንገሠ : to be king.
ነጋሽ : regent,	
አደኝ : hunter,	} from አደነ : to hunt.
አደን : game,	

C. *Augmentation* of letters in the derivation of Nouns takes place either in the *beginning* (preformation), or in the *middle* (reduplication), or at the *end* (afformation).* The letters used for this purpose are **መ**: **ሰ**: **ተ**: **ኑ**: **ፑ**: **አ**: **ወ**: **ያ**:: Of these, **መ**: **ሰ**: **ተ**: **ኑ**: **አ**: **ወ**: **አሰ**: and **አሰተ**: are *prefixed*; and **መ**: **ተ**: **ኑ**: **ፑ**: **ወ**: and **ያ**: are *affixed*. *Reduplication* takes place by repeating any of the radical letters.

(a) *Preformation*:

መ: is used for Infinitives, and retained in Nouns derived therefrom:

መጠበቅ: the watching.

መጠበቅያ: watch-house, from **ጠበቅ**: to watch.

ተ: **ተን**: **አ**: **አሰ**: **አሰተ**: and **አን**: are retained in Nouns derived from those derivations of Verbs which have these characteristic Preformatives:

Noun.	Verbal derivation.	Radix.
ተናጋሪ : speaker.	ተናገረ : to speak.	ነገረ : to say, tell.
ተንቀጥቆ : trembler.	ተንቀጠቀጠ : to tremble.	ቀጠቀጠ : to bruise.
አፈራሽ : breaker.	አፈረሰ : to break.	ፈረሰ : to burst.
አሰታማሚ : nurse for sick persons.	አሰታመመ : to nurse sick persons.	አመመ ::
አንሻታኝ : cheater.	አንሻተተ : to cheat.	ሻተተ : (<i>non occ.</i>)

አ: is prefixed to Verbs, and one of the radical letters doubled; e.g.

አገባብ: **አቀማመጥ**: **አደራረግ**::

ተ: and **ተ**: are prefixed to Verbs to form Nouns of action; e.g.

ተዕገሥት: **ተምሕርት**::

Sometimes the **አ**: or **ተ**: is cut off, and **ኑ**: retained in these Preformatives: .

* This is analogous to the Hebrew **יְהִי** and the Arabic **يَتَسَمَّى** Nouns.

Noun.	Verbal Derivation.	Radix.
ነጉድጊድ : thunder.	አንጉድጉድ : to thunder.	ጉድጉድ : Eth. to beat.
ነጠባብ : a drop.	ተንጠበበ : to drop.	ጠበበ : to trot.

ዐ: occasionally interchanges with the **መ**: of the Infinitive, the Noun being considered no longer as an Infinitive: *e.g.*

ዐምበር: (or **ዐንበር**:) chair. **መንበር**: the sitting, (Eth.)
ነበረ: to sit.

ዐምፈት: (for **መምፈት**:) or **ዐንፈት**: "sieve"; from **ነፈ**: to blow, to fan, to make wind.

(b) *Reduplication*; repetition of any of the radical letters:

Derivative.	Primitive.
ተፑፑሽ : very small.	ተፑሽ : small.
ተላላቅ : very great.	ተላቅ : great.
መልካካም : very beautiful.	መልካም : fine, beautiful.

In Verbal Nouns, which take it from the Verb, Reduplication is retained:

Nouns.	Verbal Derivation.	Radix.
ተመላላሽ : walker.	ተመላለሰ : to walk.	መለሰ : to return.

Reduplication with transposition:

ጥርጣሪ: doubt. **ተጠራጠረ**: to doubt. **ጠረረ**:

(c) *Affirmation* of the letters **መ**: **ተ**: **ኃ**: **ፑ**: and **ያ**:

α The Affirmation of **፩**: to Substantives, forms Adjectives and Substantives of Fulness, Intenseness, &c., similar to the Latin *osus*, and English *ous* and *ful*; *e.g.*

Form in <i>ām</i> .	Origin.
መልካም : beautiful (<i>formosus</i>).	መልክ : form.
ሀጃም : glutton (man of a large stomach).	ሀጅ : belly.
ፍርዖም : fertile.	ፍረ : fruit.
ወፍራም : thick.	ወፍረ : thickness.

β Affirmative **ማ**: forms Substantives:

አጃጥማ: mouse-coloured mule. **አጃጥ**: mouse.
ወሽማ: fornicator. **ወሽ**: dog.

γ The Affirmative **ተ**: *ät, et, it, itu, ät, lä*, produces feminine forms:

Form in ተ :	Origin.
ልጅተ : birth.	ወለደ : to bring forth.
ትምህርት : doctrine.	ተማረ : to learn.
ንጹሕት : (<i>fem.</i>) pure.	ንጹሕ : (<i>masc.</i>) pure.
ልጅተ : daughter.	ልጅ : son.
ፍርሃት : fear.	ፈረ : (Eth. ፈርህ :) to be afraid.
ቅረት : remainder.	ቀረ : to remain, to be left.
ዝቅት : lowness.	ዝቅ : low.

δ The Afformative **ἱ**: **ἁ**: forms Substantives of Quality, from Verbs which in Latin frequently answer those ending in *tas*, in English in *ty*:

Forms in *ἁn*.

ἁΔῳ: authority.

ἁርፃ: light, clarity.

ἁጀ: covenant.

ፃፃ: delicacy, vanity.

ፃፃ: offering, eucharist.

Verbs.

ፃፃ: & **ፃፃ**: to have authority.

ፃፃ: Eth. **ፃፃ**: to be light or clear.

ፃፃ: **ፃፃ**:

ፃፃ: to melt.

ፃፃ: to take the sacrament.

Exceptions are, **ፃፃ**: “ant”; and **ፃፃ**: “cough.”

ε **ፃ**: and **ፃ**: are affixed to Adjectives, Substantives, and Particles, in order to form Abstract Substantives; generally answering our *ence*, *ance*, *ness*, *cy*, *ty*, *hood*, and *ship*.

Forms in **ፃ**: and **ፃ**:

ፃፃ: intelligence, sagacity.

ፃፃ: highness.

ፃፃ: difference, variety.

ፃፃ: childhood, sonship.

ፃፃ: infancy.

ፃፃ: beauty, goodness.

ፃፃ: teachership.

ፃፃ: holiness.

ፃፃ: veracity.

ፃፃ: witchcraft.

Radices.

ፃፃ: heart, mind.

ፃፃ: (Eth.) high.

ፃፃ: different, various.

ፃፃ: child, son.

ፃፃ: infant.

ፃፃ: beautiful, good.

ፃፃ: teacher.

ፃፃ: holy.

ፃፃ: true.

ፃፃ: sorcerer.

ζ The Afformative **ፃ**: is affixed to Nouns, to form Adjectives and Substantives of Office, Habit, or Quality.

Forms in **ፃ**:

ፃፃ: lazy, an idler.

ፃፃ: sailor.

Radices.

ፃፃ: idleness.

ፃፃ: ship.

They often assume a **ፃ**: before the **ፃ**:

ፃፃ: labourer.

ፃፃ: refractory.

ፃፃ: work, labour.

ፃፃ: I will not.

η The Ethiopic Afformative **ፃፃ**: is affixed to Nouns Substantive with the same effect as those formed by the Afformative **ፃ**:. They, besides, form Gentile Nouns.

Form in **ፃፃ**:

ፃፃ: evangelist.

Radix.

ፃፃ: gospel.

θ The letter **ፃ**: is affixed,

ς To *Infinitives*, to form Nouns of Agency, Instrumentality, Locality, Object, &c.; whereby it must be observed, that when the letter to which it is

AUGMENTED FORMS.

A. By Affirmatives.

to Substantives and Adjectives, denoting fulness.

ዓዎ: beautiful.

ዐዎ: fruitful.

ዐ: gluttonous.

to Simple Roots, forming Substantives.

ዐ: a certain fever.

ዐ: stallion.

ዐ: fornicator.

ዐዐ: ash-coloured (lit. mouse-coloured) mule.

AT, ET, IT, UT, ተ: and ታ: Feminine Forms.

ተ: birth, nativity.

ተ: (ተልወተ:) power.

ተሐተ: boasting, glorying.

ተ: (ልጅ-ተ:) daughter.

ተ: majesty.

ተ: fear.

ተ: fornication.

ተ: the rest, remainder.

ተ: lowness.

ተ: gift.

to Simple Roots, forms Substantives of Essence (Concrete Substantives), Power, Quality.

ዐን: authority, privilege.

ን: light, clarity.

ን: covenant, treaty.

ን: infant.

ን: delicacy.

ን: offering, eucharist.

ን: ant.

ን: coughing, a cold.

(e) ና: and ነት: to Substantives, Adjectives, and Particles, form Abstract Substantives of Quality, State, &c.

ልቡና: intelligence, prudence.

ልዕልና: highness, elevation.

ዝምድና: relationship.

ልዩነት: difference, variety.

ልጅነት: sonship.

መልካምነት: goodness, beauty.

እውነትነት: verity.

እምላካዊነት: divine nature.

f. ና: to Nouns and Particles, forms Adjectives and Substantives of Office, Habit, and Quality.

ሀኪተኛ: idler.

መርከብኛ: navigator, sailor.

Often assumes ተ::

አዘንተኛ: mournful.

ስራተኛ: workman, labourer.

እምቢተኛ: unwilling.

(g) ልወ, with the same effect as the preceding.

ወንጌላዊ: evangelist.

ፈሪሳዊ: Pharisee.

ፈረንሳዊ: French.

(h) ያ: expressed or implied, forms Nouns of Instrumentality, Agency, Locality, Object, Individuality.

α To Infinitives.

መሠረያ: a tie.

መለኪያ: measuring instrument.

መለገጃ: object of scorn.

β To Simple Roots.

ቅምያ: spoil, booty.

ቅምቫ: bit, morsel, taste.

ጽርጊያ: rubbish, sweepings.

to be joined, is one of those changeable Linguals or Dentals mentioned in Part I. Ch. VII. 4 c., both **Ṣ**: and the letter to which it was to be joined, are dropped, and exchanged for such a cognate Lingual or Dental as combines the joint sounds. (See the above-mentioned paragraph.)

Forms with **Ṣ**:, the **Ṣ**: being either expressed or implied.

መልከ.Ṣ: measure.

መለገጅ: object, means of scorn.

ማለፍ.Ṣ: passage, excellent.

መገተምṢ: printing-office.

መመለከ: place, or means of returning.

ማሠር.Ṣ: a tie, band, bond.

Infinitives.

መለከ: the measuring.

መለገጅ: the scorning.

ማለፍ: the passing.

መገተም: the printing.

መመለከ: the returning.

ማሠር: the binding.

□ To Simple Roots, with the same object and in the same manner as to Infinitives:

Forms with **Ṣ**::

ቅምṢ: booty.

ቅምከ: a bit, taste.

ጉትቻ: trail, train.

ጽርጊ.Ṣ: rubbish.

Roots.

ቀማ: to plunder.

ቅምከ: the tasting.

ጉትት: the dragging.

ጽርጊ: sweeping.

SECTION II.

On the Species of Nouns.

1. Nouns are to be considered, either as *Substantives*, names of things, or as *Adjectives*, names of properties. In the Amharic, as in the other Semitic Languages, they both belong together; and they have been jointly treated in the preceding Section as to their Formation. It remains now to say a few words concerning the Adjectives.

2. As to their Formation, but few of them, as the preceding Tables show, are *original*: such are,

በጎ: good.

ደህና: well.

እመሉ: bad.

ሞላላ: oblong.

ደጊሳ: prominent.

እርጊ: old.

Even these are but primarily Adjectives; and when isolated, may be, and are, used as Substantives. Most Adjectives are of derivative forms, being derived either from Verbs (see Table II.) or from Substantives; *e.g.*

ገፈም: አዋቂ: መሪር: መልከኛ: መልካም: አሳዊ::

Participial Adjectives, **ሞያኛ**: **የተመነ**::

3. As for Comparison, the Amharic Language, like the Hebrew, has no

Adjective form to express the Comparative or Superlative: we therefore must defer this subject to the Syntax.

4. The Numeral Nouns will be treated in a separate chapter.

We now proceed to the consideration of the *Gender* of the Nouns.

SECTION III.

On the Gender of the Nouns.

1. The Amharic Nouns have but two *Genders*, Masculine and Feminine. We shall endeavour to point out a few general rules, showing what Nouns belong to either of the two genders, and by which forms they are to be recognised. We have to complain, however, that there is yet much confusion; both masculine and feminine forms being alternately applied to words where the sex is not palpably distinguished.

A. Masculine are:

(a) The names of God, angels, and men; also the names of nations, and of all male animals:

እግዚአብሔር: God,	ሰይጣን: Satan.	ዓረብ: an Arab.
the Lord.	ገብርኤል: Gabriel.	ሀበሺ: an Abyssinian.
አምላክ: God.	ሰው: man.	ፍረንሲስ: a Frenchman.
የሱስ: Jesus.	ዮሐንስ: John.	አንበሳ: a lion.
መልአክ: angel.		

(b) The names of the sun and the stars, of ranks and offices of men:

ፀሐይ: sun.	ሹም: governor.	ጠባቂ: guardian.
ኮከብ: star.	ገዢ: ruler.	ሉሊ: servant.

B. Feminine are:

The names of women and female animals; the names of the moon, the earth, countries, towns, &c.; plants; the names of female ranks and offices; collective names; and the names of several abstracts:

ማርያም: Mary.	ከተማ: city, camp.	ወያኔ: princess, lady.
ደር: hen.	መንደር: village.	አመቤት: mistress.
ዉረቃ: moon.	ጎንደር: Gondar.	ገረጽ: female servant.
ምድር: earth, country.	ዛፍ: tree.	ጉባኤ: assembly, society.
ሐበሻ: Abyssinia.	አበባ: a flower.	

And see 2.

C. Common, are several conditions of life; as, "child," "slave," and others, where the termination of the word does not distinguish the sex.

2. The two Genders are distinguished,

(a) By the addition of distinct words denoting the Male and the Female. These are: **ወንድ**: and **ተባት**: for Males, and **ሴት**: and **አንስት**: for Females: besides this, **አውራ**: for several male animals, who are without this distinction considered as females; as, goats, fowl, &c.: *e.g.*

ወንድ: **ልጅ**: a son, boy.

ሴት: **ልጅ**: a daughter, girl.

የንስሳ: **ተባት**: male of animals.

የንስሳ: **አንስት**: female of animals.

አውራ: **ፍጥል**: he-goat.

አውራ: **ደር**: cock (he-fowl).

In Shoa, they carry this distinction further; calling "clayish earth" **ወንድ**: or **ተባት**: **ምድር**: (male earth), and "loose earth" **አንስት**: or **ሴት**: **ምድር**: (female earth). They call wood which splits perpendicularly, **ወንድ**: **አንጩት**: "male wood"; and wood which splits transversely, **ሴት**: **አንጩት**: "female wood." Maria-Theresa dollars, which have the requisite coinage, **አንስት**: **ብር**: "female dollars"; and those which are any way deficient, being M. T. dollars, **ተባት**: **ብር**: "male dollars." The latter distinction obtains in all Abyssinia.

(b) The Female is distinguished by the termination **ት**: **ታ**: and **ቱ**:: (See the Table of Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(c) The same by **ፍ**: and **ነት**: (See Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(d) The Primitives are mostly *Masculines*.

(e) As to the Derivative forms, the following rule obtains:

Classes I. 1. 2. 3. 6. and II. 4. *f. g.* are predominantly Masculine; and Classes I. 4. and II. 4. *c. d. e.* predominantly Feminine. The rest are of Mixed Gender.

3. The remaining Nouns are undetermined as to the sex; the Adjective and Verb being promiscuously applied to them in the Masculine and in the Feminine Gender.

4. Several Adjectives and Substantives, whose form is Masculine, are changed into a Feminine form:

Masculine.

ንጹ:

ብሩ:

ገሩም:

ጠባቂ:

አርጌ:

ወራሽ: heir.

ሀኪተኛ:

አረማዊ: heathen man.

Feminine.

ንጹሐት: pure.

ብርሀት: clear.

ገሩምት: wonderful.

ጠባቂቱ: guardian.

አርጌት: old.

ወራሽቱ: heiress.

ሀኪተኛቱ: lazy.

አረማዊት: heathen woman.

SECTION IV.

On the Number of the Nouns.

1. The number is but twofold; viz. *Singular* and *Plural*. We might add the *Collective*; but that being considered either as a body, when it is Singular, or as an aggregate of individuals, when it is plural, it constitutes no particular form; and we therefore proceed to consider these two, the Singular and the Plural; there being no Dual in this language.

2. As the Singular is that form in which each Noun, before it is changed, presents itself, we need not say any thing about it, but direct our attention at once to the formation of the *Plural* Number.

3. The truly Amharic Plural is very simple; it has but one form, and that is the termination *otsh* (Tigrê *ot*); in which we recognise the Hebrew **ות**, the Arabic **وت**, and the Ethiopic *āt*; e. g.

Singular.		Plural.	
ቤት :	house.	ቤተ :	houses.
ወብ :	dog.	ወቦ :	dogs.
ልጅ :	child.	ልጆ :	children.
አባት :	father.	አባተ :	fathers.
ጠባቂ :	guardian.	ጠባቂ :	guardians.
በጎ :	good.	በጎ :	good.

NOTE.—The Plural termination of several Nouns ending in the fifth order is divided into two Consonants; the original letter being put into the sixth order, and a **P**: being added, to which the Plural **ት**: is affixed; e. g.

ምሳሌት: similitudes, from **ምሳሌ**:

4. But besides this Amharic, we have the following Ethiopic Plural forms; which sometimes are applied, although the true Amh. Plural always may be put.

(a) Termination *ān*.

For the Derivates, I. 1. II. 4. *g.* and some other forms; e. g.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
ቅዱስ : holy.	ቅዱሳን : saints.	ፈሪሳዊ : Pharisee.	ፈሪሳውያን :
ጠቢቅ : wise.	ጠቢባን :	ገጥኦ : sinner.	ገጥኦን :
ሕያው : living.	ሕያዋን :	ነጹህ : poor.	ነጹያን :
ሙት : dead.	ሙተን :	መምህር : teacher.	መምህራን :

NOTE.—Irregular: **አይሁዳዊ**: "Jew." **አይሁድ**: "Jews."

(b) Termination *āt*.

The Feminines of the Plural Adjectives in *ān*.

ቅዱሳት: **ነጹያት**: **ቡረካት**: **ሕያዋት**:

The Derivative forms terminating in *ān*.

ሥልጣን: authority. **ሥልጣናት**:: **ብርሃን**: light. **ብርሃኖች**: lights.
ሕፃን: infant. **ሕፃናት**: infants.

Besides these :

Singular.

ሰማይ: heaven.

ደመና: cloud.

ፈጽል: letter.

ቃል: word.

ምሥጢር: secret.

Plural.

ሰማያት: heavens.

ደመናት: clouds.

ፈጽላት: letters.

ቃላት: words.

ምሥጢራት: secrets.

Some forms ending in the fifth order :

ምሳሌ: likeness.

ምሳሌያት: likenesses.

ጊዜ: time.

ጊዜያት: times.

Words ending in the servile ት ::

አመት: year.

አምታት: years.

ሰማዕት: martyr.

ሰማዕታት: martyrs.

Other forms :

ሐዋርያ: apostle.

ሐዋርያት: apostles.

ንፋስ: wind.

ንፋሳት: winds.

ሕግ: law.

ሕጋት: laws.

ቤት: house.

አብያት: houses.*

ካህን: priest.

ካህናት: priests.

ጳጳስ: metropolitan.

ጳጳሳት: metropolitans.

ኢጲስቆጶስ: bishop.

ኢጲስቆጶሳት: bishops.

ዲያቆን: deacon.

ዲያቆኖች: deacons.

(c) Form **አግቡር**::

አገር: village.

አህጉር: villages.

(d) From **አግባር**::

ወትር: string.

አውታር: strings.

ሕዝብ: people.

አሕዛብ: people.

ሶፍ: bird.

አዕዋፍ: birds.

ዐምድ: pillar.

አእማድ: pillars.

(e) **ገባሪት**::

Singular.

አረዌ: wild.

ሠርዌ: beam.

Plural.

አራዊት: wild beasts.

ሠራዊት: army.

* Used only in **አብያተ ክርስቲያናት**: "Churches," from **ቤተ ክርስቲያን**: "a Church."

(f) አጋብረት::

ቁስ: priest.

መንፈስ: spirit.

አንበሳ: lion.

መከ-ነን: judge.

ከንፈር: lip.

ኮከብ: star.

አምላክ: God.

ነምር: leopard.

መልአክ: angel.

መስኮት: window.

ሊቅ: chief.

ቦቅሉ: mule.

ጋሌን: demon.

ቀሳውስት: priests.

መንፈስት: spirits.

አናብስት: lions.

መኪንንት: judges.

ከፍፍር: lips.

ከዋክብት: stars.

አማልክት: gods.

አናምርት: leopards.

መላእክት: angels.

መሳኮት: windows.

ሊቃውንት: chiefs.

ቦቅሎች: and አባቅልቶች: mules.

አጋንንት: demons.

Rare forms:

ንጉሥ: king.

ነገሥት: and ነገሥታት: kings.

ሞኅኩሲ: monk.

ሞናክሶች: ሞናኩስት: & ሞኒኪኩስት: monks.

5. It is well to attend to these various forms, as they frequently occur in the Amharic Bible as well as in conversation: but it must be borne in mind, that they are all of Ethiopic origin, and superseded by the simple Amharic form *otsh*; and a beginner will never be mistaken in using the latter, until he is sufficiently acquainted with the language to know where he has to apply any of the other forms.

SECTION V.

On the Declension of the Nouns.

The Declension of Nouns is very simple and uniform. Nouns are inflected through four Cases, equally in the Singular and the Plural, *i.e.* the Nominative, the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative. One example may suffice to show the whole mode of proceeding:

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. ቤት: a house.	ቤቶች: houses.
Gen. የቤት: of a house, a house's.	የቤቶች: of houses.
Dat. ለቤት: to a house.	ለቤቶች: to houses.
Acc. ቤትን: a house.	ቤቶችን: houses.

OBSERVATIONS:

(a) The Genitive answers the Eth. *H*:, and is not to be confounded with the Pronouns Relative or Distributive.

The Accusative Case must not be confounded with the Interrogative Adverb ን:; nor with the termination ን: of Nouns. On the Construction, and on the various uses of the Accusative, see Syntax.

2. It occasionally happens, that they make use of the Ethiopic Genitive or *status constructus*, i.e. that mode of construction which prevails in the Hebrew, and which has been noticed in the First Section of this Chapter, § 4. The two nouns, which stand in a genitive relation to each other, one of which is the *regens* (Nominative), and the other the *rectum* (Genitive), are so closely connected as to appear as one word. The Genitive follows the Nominative, and receives the tone or accent; in doing which, the preceding Noun, the Nominative, is modified: in the Hebrew it is shortened: in our case, the last letter, if it is of the sixth order, is changed into the first, and the two words are considered as one compound, separated merely by the (:) colon; but even this, in the Amharic, is often dropped, especially when the Genitive begins with a vowel consonant, or when it is a short word:

ባለ: ቤት: and ባለቤት: “master of the house.”

ባለጃ: for ባለ: ዕጃ: “owner of debts,” i.e. “creditor” or “debtor.”

Another change is produced by the affixion of Pronouns to Nouns, of which we shall speak under the head of Inseparable Pronouns.

CHAP. II.

ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numerals are of two kinds, *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*. The Cardinals specify the number of things which are the subject of speech: the Ordinals exhibit the order in which they occur.

2. The *Cardinal Numbers* in the Amharic are as follow:

Cipher.	Amharic.	English.	Cipher.	Amharic.	English.
፩:	1. አንድ:	One, a,	፳:	30. ሠላሳ:	Thirty.
	{ ፊ. አንድት: }	an.	፷:	40. { አርገ: or አርገጫ: }	Forty.
፪:	2. ሁለት:	Two.	፵:	50. አምስት:	Fifty.
፫:	3. ሶስት:	Three.	፶:	60. ስድሳ: or ስሳ:	Sixty.
፬:	4. አራት:	Four.	፷:	70. ሰባ: or ሰባጫ:	Seventy.
፭:	5. አምስት:	Five.	፸:	80. ስመንያ:	Eighty.
፮:	6. ስድስት:	Six.	፵:	90. ከጠፍ:	Ninety.
፯:	7. ሰባት:	Seven.	፫:	100. መቶ:	Hundred.
፰:	8. ስምንት:	Eight.	፲፫:	1000. ሺህ:	Thousand.
፱:	9. ከጠኝ:	Nine.	፫፫:	10000. አልፋ:	Ten Thousand.
፲:	10. አሥር:	Ten.			
፳:	20. ሁያ:	Twenty.			

Compound Cardinals.

፫፩: 11. አሥራ: አንድ:	Eleven.	፫፯: 16. አሥራ: ስድስት:	Sixteen.
፫፪: 12. አሥራ: ሁለት:	Twelve.	፫፯: 17. አሥራ: ሰባት:	Seventeen.
፫፫: 13. አምራ: ሶስት:	Thirteen.	፫፰: 18. አሥራ: ስምንት:	Eighteen.
፫፬: 14. አሥራ: አራት:	Fourteen.	፫፱: 19. አሥራ: ዘጠኝ:	Nineteen.
፫፭: 15. አሥራ: አምስት:	Fifteen.		

The same order is observed with all the Tenth, to a Hundred; *e.g.*

ሀያ: አንድ:: ሥላሳ: ሁለት:: አርባ: ሶስት: &c.

The numbers upward of a Hundred are joined to the Hundreds by **ከ**: or **ጥ**:; *e.g.*

፫፯: 106. **መጥ: ከስድስት::** One hundred and six.

፫፰: 160. **መጥ: ጥስሳ: or መጥ: ከስሳ:** One hundred and sixty.

፫፱: 199. **መጥ: ከዘጠኝ: ዘጠኝ::** One hundred & ninety-nine.

፪፻: 200. **ሁለት: መጥ:** Two hundred.

፲፰፱፩: 1841. **ሸህ: ጥስምንት: መጥ: ካርባ: አንድ: or አሥራ: ስምንት: መጥ: ካርባ: አንድ:** One Thousand Eight Hundred and Forty-one.

3. The *Ordinal* Numbers are formed by the termination **ኛ**: affixed to the *Cardinals*.

አንደኛ:: መጀመርያ: } the First.
or **ፈተኛ::**

ሁለተኛ: the Second.

ሶስተኛ: the Third.

አራተኛ: the Fourth.

አምስተኛ: the Fifth.

ስድስተኛ: the Sixth.

ሰባተኛ: the Seventh.

ስምንተኛ: the Eighth.

ዘጠኙኛ: and ዘጠነኛ: the Ninth.

አሥረኛ: the Tenth.

አሥራ: ሁለተኛ: the Eleventh.

&c. &c.

The Simple Numbers, Twenty, Thirty, and upwards, scarcely admit of the termination **ኛ**:, but are generally given to the Cardinal form. In compounds, the last number receives the termination **ኛ**;; as,

ሀያ: አንደኛ: ምዕራፍ: the Twenty-first chapter.

4. They have no particular form for the Distributive Numbers; but they express them, either by reiteration, as,

አንድ: አንድ: (contr. **አንደንድ:**) one-by-one, some, several, one or other, singly, severally.

ሁለት: ሁለት: two-and-two;

Or by አዋ: or አ.ዋ: as,

አያንደኛድ: each, every. አዋሁልት: by twos, by pairs, two-and-two, every two, every couple, &c. &c.

በየሶስት: ቀን: every three days.

CHAP. III.

ON THE PRONOUNS.

1. The Amharic *Pronouns* are, as to their *logical* character, divided, as in other languages, into, 1. Personal; 2. Possessive; 3. Demonstrative; 4. Relative; 5. Interrogative; 6. Reflective; and 7. Distributive Pronouns. As to their *forms*, they are classed, as in other Semitic Languages, into Separable and Inseparable Pronouns. We begin with the *Separable Pronouns*. They are Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, and Reflective.

SECTION I.

Separable Personal Pronouns.

They are Three for the Singular, and Three for the Plural. The Singular has some peculiarities. The First Person has not the Gender expressed: the Second and Third have distinct forms for the Masculine and for the Feminine Gender: the Second Person has, besides, three distinctions of honour, as the following Paradigm shows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Com.	Fem.	Com.	
1 Pers.		አኔ: I.		አኛ: we.	
2 Pers.	አንተ:		አንት: } thou.	አላንተ: you.	
			አንቺ: }		
		አንቱ: } you.			
		አርሰዋ: }			
3 Pers.	አርሱ: he, it.		አርሰዋ: she, it.	አርሰኛዋ: they.	

NOTE. (a) On the application of the three different forms for the Second Person: አንተ: and አንቺ: are applied to inferiors, to God, to intimate friends; and in universal address, where you need not pay any regard to rank, &c. አንቱ: is used for a *lesser*; አርሰዋ: for a *higher* degree of honour. These two forms resemble the German *Ihr* (in Switzerland *Er*), and *Sie*, and the Italian *Voi* and *Lei*, for the Second Person Singular.

(b) In speaking of a *distinguished* person, the form of the Third Person Plural is used, as a mark of honour.

SECTION II.

Separable Possessive Pronouns.

They are formed by the Genitive of the Personal Pronouns; and are as follows:

Singular.	Plural.
የኔ: my, mine.	የሹ: our, ours.
የንጉ: <i>m.</i> የንጉት: <i>f.</i> thy, thine.	የላንጉት: your, yours.
የንጉት: <i>m.</i> የርሰዋ: your, yours.	የርሳቸው: their, theirs.
የርሱ: <i>m.</i> his. የርሷ: <i>f.</i> her, hers.	

SECTION III.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

They are two in number; one for near, and one for remote objects.

1. *Demonstrative for Near Objects.*

ይህ: *masc.* **ይህች:** or **ይች:** *fem.* "This."

Shoa Dialect: **እዚህ:** *masc.* **እዚህች:** *fem.*

DECLENSION.

COMMON FORM, IRREGULAR.

	Masc.		SINGULAR.		Fem.
Nom.	ይህ::		ይህች:	contr.	ይች: this.
Gen.	የዚህ::		የዚህች:	..	የዚች: of this.
Dat.	ለዚህ::		ለዚህች:	..	ለዚች: to this.
Acc.	ይህን: & ይህንን::		ይህንን:	..	ይችን: this.
			PLURAL.		
			Common Gender.		
Nom.	እዚህ:	or	እነዚህ:	contr.	እሌህ: these.
Gen.	የዚህ:	..	የነዚህ:	..	የሌህ: of these.
Dat.	ለዚህ:	..	ለነዚህ:	..	ለሌህ: to these.
Acc.	እዚህን:	..	እነዚህን:	..	እሌህን: these.

SHOA FORM, REGULAR.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	Masc.	Fem.	Common.
N.	እዚህ:	እዚህች: this.	እዚህ: or እነዚህ:
G.	የዚህ:	የዚህች: of this.	contr. እሌህ: &c. the same as above,
D.	ለዚህ:	ለዚህች: to this.	but the ዚ: prevailing throughout.
A	እዚህን:	እዚህችን: this.	

ANOTHER REGULAR FORM, OCCASIONALLY USED IN SHOA.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.		Com.	
N. ይህ:	ይህች:	contr. ይች::	እለዋህ:	contr. የለህ:	
G. የይህ:	የይህች:	.. የይች::	የለዋህ:	.. የለህ:	
D. ለይህ:	ለይህች:	.. ለይች::	ለለዋህ:	.. ለለህ:	
A. ይህን:	ይህችን:	.. ይችን:	እለዋህን:	.. እለህን::	
ይህን::					

2. For Remote Objects.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.		Common.	
N. ያ:	ያች:	that.	እለዚያ:	& እነዚያ:	contr. እልያ: those.
G. የዚያ:	የዚያች:	of that.	የለዚያ:	& የነዚያ:	.. የልያ: of those.
D. ለዚያ:	ለዚያች:	to that.	ለለዚያ:	& ለነዚያ:	.. ለልያ: to those.
A. ያን:	ያችን:	that.	እለዚያን:	& እነዚያን:	.. እልያን: those.

FORM OCCASIONALLY OCCURRING IN SHOA.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	Masc.	Fem.		Common.
N. እዛ:	እዛች:	that.	Like the above, only contracting ዚያ: to ዛ::	
G. የዛ:	የዛች:	of that.		
D. ለዛ:	ለዛች:	to that.		
A. እዛን:	እዛችን:	that.		

NOTE.—The Demonstrative Pronouns form Adverbs ; which see, under the head of Adverbs.

SECTION IV.

Interrogative Pronouns.

There are four: One Personal, ማን: *pl.* እለማን: “who?” “which?” “what sort of?” One Impersonal, ምን: “which?” “what?” One Common, የት: “what?” “which?” One Universal, ምንድን: “what?”

The Personal is ማን: “who?” “which?” *e.g.*

ማን: አደረገ: ይህን: *Who* did this?

ይህ: ማን: ነው: (or ማነው:) *Who* is this?

ከሁለቱ: ማን: *Which* of both?

The Impersonal is ምን: “which?” “what?” *e.g.*

ምን: አደረገህ: *What* hast thou done?

ምን: ቤት: *Which* house?

The Universal Interrogative Pronoun is **ምንድር**: "what?" e.g.

ይህ: ምንድር: ነው: *What is this?*

ማን: and **ምን:** are declinable, thus:

SINGULAR.	
Pers.	Impers.
Nom. ማን: who? which?	ምን: what? which?
Gen. የማን: of whom? whose? of which?	የምን: of what? of which? whose?
Dat. ለማን: to (for) whom? to (for) which?	ለምን: to (for) what? to (for) which? wherefore?
Acc. ማንን: whom? which?	ምንን: what? which?
PLURAL.	
Nom. አለማን: who? which?	አለምን: which?
Gen. የአለማን: whose? of which?	የአለምን: of which? whose?
Dat. ለአለማን: to whom? to which?	ለአለምን: to which?
Acc. አለማንን: whom? which?	አለምንን: which?

ምንድር: has no Plural; and is defective in the Singular, having no Accusative Case.

Besides the preceding, they have the Interrogative Pronoun **የት**: or Euphonic **የቱ**: "what?" "who?" "which?" It is indeclinable, and used chiefly in forming Adverbs, by joining with Prepositions; as, **እንዲት**: **ወዲት**: &c.

SECTION V.

Reflective Pronouns.

They are three, **ባለቤት**: **ራስ**: and **ነፍስ**: with the signification of *self*. They assume the Suffixes of the Possessive Pronoun, as in the English *myself*, *thyself*, &c. So is in all Abyssinia **ራስ**: with Suffixes **ራሴ**: **ራስህ**: **ራስሽ**: **ራስዎ**: **ራሱ**: **ራስዋ**: **ራሳችን**: **ራሳችሁ**: **ራሳቸው**: "myself," "thyself," &c. **ባለቤት**:, with Suffixes, is not used in Shoa; but in N.W. Abyssinia, it is common. **ነፍስ**: with Suffixes is used in all Abyssinia, though not so often as **ራስ**:. But the reflective mode of speaking is more frequently used in Verbs, without these Pronouns, as will be shown afterwards.

SECTION VI.

Distributive Separable Pronoun.

This is **እያንዳንዱ**: "each," "every," with Suffixes. As it is composed of a double **አንድ**: and the distributive **እያ**:, it has been numbered already among the Distributive Numerals.

SECTION VII.

Indefinite Pronouns.

These are the following:

ማንም: any, each, every one, whoever, whosoever.

ማናቸው: *m.* **ማናቸደቱ**: *fem.* whosoever.

ሁሉ: all, each, every, any.

ሌላ: other.

አንደኛ: some, something.

1. **ማንም**: **ማናቸው**: and **ማናቸደቱ**: are used only in the Singular, nor receive they any Suffix. When used with the Verb in the negative, they adopt the reverse to their natural signification, "none," "none whatever."

2. **ሁሉ**: is rather the Substantive **ሁል**: "totality," with Suffixes. It assumes all Suffixes, and is declinable; but has no Plural.

3. **ሌላ**: is used in both the Plural and the Singular Numbers, and is declinable.

4. **አንደኛ**: is declinable, and used only in the Singular.

5. **አያል**: "some," "several," is declinable, and has but one number. Besides this, the words, "some" and "such," are circumscribed by Verbs; *e.g.* "Some men like it," **የሚወዷት**: **አሉ**: *lit.* "There are men who like it." "Such:" **አንደህ**: **ያል**: or *pl.* **አንደህ**: **ያሉ**: "who is," or "who are so."

SECTION VIII.

Inseparable Pronouns.

They are, with regard to their character, Personal, Possessive, Relative, and Distributive; and with regard to their position, they are either Prefixes or Suffixes.

1. *Personal Suffixes to Verbs.**

They consist partly in modifications of the Personal Pronoun; and are annexed to any part of the Verb except the Infinitive; for that Mood, being considered in this respect as a Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes.

* We do not speak of those personal designations the Verbs receive at their beginning or end; because they are so intimately connected with the Verb, that we cannot consider them separately.

The following Table contains them all :

SINGULAR.			FLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.	
3. ልዑ፡ ት፡ him.	ልት፡ her.		ልትዑ፡ them.	
2. ህ፡ thee.	ሽ፡ thee.			
.. honorif. 1.		ልትህ፡ you.	} ልትህ፡ you.	
.. . . . 2.		ልዐ፡ you.		
1.		ኝ፡ me.	ኝ፡ perfect. ኝ፡ pres. &c., us.	

SINGULAR.		FLURAL.	
Suff. 1.		1.	
2.	ጠበቀኝ፡ he protected me.	ጠበቀኝ፡ he protected us.	
.. 2.	ጠበቀህ፡ } he protected	ጠበቀኝ፡ (imp.) protect us!	
.. ..	ጠበቀሽ፡ } thee.	2. ጠበቀትህ፡ he protected you.	
.. .. hon.	ጠበቀትህ፡ } he protect-		
	ጠበቀዐ፡ } ed you.		
.. 3.	ጠበቀዐ፡ { he protected	3. ጠበቀው፡ he protected them.	
	ጠበቀት፡ { him.		
	ጠበቀት፡ he protected her.		

NOTE.—Suffix 3d pers. sing. masc. to Prepositions has ት፡; e.g.

በት፡ in him.

ለት፡ to, or for him.

2. Possessive Suffixes to Nouns.

They are, to a certain degree, similar to the preceding.

SINGULAR.			FLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.	
3. ህ, or ልዑ፡ his.	ዋ፡ her.		3. ልትዑ፡ their.	
.. hon.		ልትዑ፡ his, her.		
2. com. ህ፡ thy.	ሽ፡ thy.		2. ልትህ፡ your.	
.. hon. 1.		ልትህ፡ your.		
.. .. 2.		ልዐ፡ your.		
1.		ኔ፡ my.	1. ልትኝ፡ our.	

Ex.—ቤት፡ “House,” with Suffixes.

SINGULAR.			FLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.	
3. ቤት፡ his house.	ቤትዋ፡ her house.		ቤትዐ፡ their h.	
.. hon.		ቤትዐ፡ his (her) h.		
2. ቤትህ፡	ቤትሽ፡ thy house.		ቤትህ፡ your h.	
.. hon. 1.		ቤትህ፡ your h.		
.. .. 2.		ቤትዐ፡ your house.		
1.		ቤቴ፡ my house.	ቤትኝ፡ our h.	

4. *Prefixed Distributive Pronoun.*

There is but one, which has been mentioned already, under the Numerals: it is, **አዋ**: or **አ.ዋ**:: **አዋሰሱት ቀን**: “Every three days.” Prepositions have the power of absorbing the first letter; when care must be taken not to confound the remaining **ዋ** — with the Relative Pronoun; bearing in mind, that the Relative itself would be absorbed by the Preposition: nor stands it, except before Verbs.

ON THE VERBS.

The Verb being, next to the Noun, the most essential part of speech, we are to give it our fullest consideration. In entering upon it, we treat, 1. On its Formation and Quality; 2. On the Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs; 3. On their Flexion; 4. On their Conjugation; 5. On the Affixion of Pronouns to Verbs.

Formation and Quality of Verbs.

1. The Verb, in general, seems to represent the chief developement of those roots of the language which are contained in the Noun. The original idea of the Noun is exhibited as a thing of time, found in a certain condition, and undergoing or producing various actions and changes. This consideration implies, that the Verb, in general, originates in the Noun. In the Hebrew, we can trace its course from the Primitive Nominal Form, through the Participle (in Kal), to the 3d pers. masc. preterite; the latter being, in all the Semitic Languages, the grammatical root of the Verb. In the Amharic, the Constructive Mood, of which we shall speak afterwards, seems to be the medium of transition from the Primitive Noun to the 3d pers. masc. preterite of the Verb.

2. Now the latter, the 3d masc. pers. sing. of the preterite in the Simple Forms of Verbs, constitutes, as has been just now alluded to, the origin of all the other Verbal Forms; the same as, in our languages, the Infinitive; or in the Greek, the Latin, the Italian, and others, the 1st pers. sing. of the present tense: on this account it is put forward, for grammatical and

lexical purposes, as the radix, or rather (because the true radices of the Verbs are contained in the Noun) as the stem, from which all the other forms branch off. In the Amharic, it presents various formations, as well as the Noun—bilitera, trilitera, quadrilitera, and plurilitera: but in it, as well as in the Noun, the majority consists of trilateral forms; which majority is still augmented, whenever the present contracted biliteral forms, and many plurilaterals evidently amplified, are restored to their original fulness or simplicity.

3. In reference to *Quality*, then, the Verbs present two grand divisions; i.e. *Perfect* and *Imperfect* Verbs, which again may be sub-divided in other classes. *Perfect* Verbs are those which are flexible in, at least, several Derivations, and throughout all the Moods, Tenses, and Persons in Conjugation, without losing any of their Radicals. *Imperfect* Verbs are either Defective, Augmented, or Irregular.

NOTE.—(a) Perfect Verbs may be divided into Primitives, i.e. whose origin cannot be traced to any further root; and Derivatives, which have for their origin either a Noun (Denominatives), or another Verb (Verbals). We subjoin here a few specimens of each.

PRIMITIVES.

ቀበረ: he buried.

መለሰ: he turned, returned.

ሰገደ: he worshipped.

ቀሠረ: he chastised.

ሸፈነ: he covered.

DENOMINATIVES.

Original Noun.

ከበረ: he was honoured.

ገለጸ: he revealed.

መሰከረ: he testified.

ሰነበተ: he remained.

በረከተ: was flatulent.

አመሰቀለ: crucified.

ክብር: honour.

ግለጽ: the public.

ምስክር: witness.

ሰንበተ: Sabbath.

በረከተ: blessing.

መሰቀለ: cross, crucifix.

VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Original Verb.

መሰገነ: he was glorious.

መሠረተ: he laid a foundation.

ገነ: it flourished, he was glorious.

ሠራ: he built.

(b) Under Defective Verbs, we mean, (1) Those which occasionally lose some of the Radicals; and (2) Such as have not all the Moods or Tenses, or Persons in conjugation. They will be mentioned in their proper places.

(c) Irregular Verbs are of various kinds :

- A. Such in which the Affirmatives are irregular.
- B. Such as have either the first or second, or second and third Radical Letters contracted.
- C. Geminants.
- D. Reduplicated and Transposed forms.

All these will be exhibited, with their respective Conjugations, after the Regular or Perfect Verb.

SECTION II.

Various Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs.

1. In every language, the original idea of a Verb must be determinable by the relation of the subject to the object; and those various relations must be in some way or other expressible by the form of the Verb. The state of any subject of speech, or its action, is either confined to itself, or it exerts an influence on an object, or is itself the object of extraneous influence. This circumstance renders, in every language, three classes of Verbs, or three conditions of the same verb, necessary; *i.e.* neutrality (immanence), action upon other objects, and suffering. In the English Grammars, these qualities are called *Voices*; in the Semitic languages, *Conjugations*, or better, *Derivations*.

2. The ways to express these Voices are different in different languages, according to the pliability and vigour the latter possess.

The more original and vigorous a language is, we conceive, the more will it be able to derive all it requires, for the purpose of expressing the various relations of the verb, from the original verb itself, without the assistance of auxiliaries, and without circumscription: and this seems to show the superiority of the Semitic over the European Languages; because the former fully possess that power, while the latter are deficient in it.

In the English, the Passive Voice is not expressible, but by the Auxiliary *To be*. The Greek language has the power of expressing it by a change of the Active in the termination, converting ω in $\omega\mu\alpha\iota$, &c. The Transitive is, in a few instances, formed by a change of the vowel, as "to fell" (*i.e.* make fall), from "to fall"; sometimes by Prepositions, as "to enforce," "to belabour," &c.; but, on the whole, European languages are deficient in this respect.

3. In the Semitic languages, the form of the original verb is altered, either by the mere change of vowels in the same radical consonants, or by an addition of servile letters with a suitable change of vowels, in order to express the various determinations and modifications, *i.e.* Voices or Conjugations, of which the verb is susceptible. Of these derivations, the

Hebrew Verb has seven; the Arabic, thirteen; the Ethiopic, ten different forms. For the Amharic, Ludolf has assigned but four Conjugations; but an attention to the following will show that there are many more.

4. As the Triliterals are the most numerous and the most perfect words, we present the reader, first, with a list of all the Forms of Conjugation, to which the perfect Triliteral Verb is liable. And since all these forms do not proceed from any single stem, we take several stems together. The Verbs which will serve us for this purpose are the following:

መለሰ: <i>act.</i> he returned.	ሰበረ: he burst.
ከበረ: he was glorious, respectable. (ደረገ: non occ.)	
ሰደበ: he reviled.	አደረገ: he did.
ነገረ: he said.	ደነዘ: was blunt.
መገ-ተ: he contradicted.	ፈተላ: spun.
መሰለ: he resembled.	በረቆ: he fulminated.*
ወረደ: he descended.	

LIST OF CONJUGATIONS OF THE REGULAR AND PERFECT TRILITERAL VERB.

- I. **መለሰ:** *act.* "he returned," "repeated." **ከበረ:** *neut.* "he was respectable."
- II. **ሳደበ:** *intens.* "he scolded exceedingly."
- III. **አከበረ:** *trs.* "he honoured."
- IV. **ተመለሰ:** *pass.* "was returned." *refl.* "returned."
- V. **አደነገረ:** *trs. & caus.* "he made speak," "caused to speak."
- VI. **ተናገረ:** *contin.* "he spoke." *intens.* **ተሳደበ:** "reviled," "blasphemed;" *i.q.* **ሳደበ:** **ተማከረ:** *recipr.* "he counselled," "gave and took advice."
- VII. **ተምዋገተ:** *recipr.* "he disputed."
- VIII. **አስመለሰ:** *caus.* "he caused to return."

* These are the known forms of each of these Verbs: **መለሰ:** **ተመለሰ:** **አስመለሰ:** **ተመለሰሰ:** **ተመለሰሰ:** **ከበረ:** **አከበረ:** **አስከበረ:** **ሰደበ:** **ሳደበ:** **አሰደበ:** **ተሰደበ:** **አሳደበ:** **ተሳደበ:** **ነገረ:** **አደነገረ:** **ተናገረ:** **ተናገረ:** **ደነገረ:** **አደነገረ:** **አወሸነገረ:** **መገ-ተ:** **ተመገ-ተ:** **ተምዋገተ:** **መሰለ:** **ተመሰለ:** **አስመሰለ:** **አስመሰሰ:** **ወረደ:** **አወረደ:** **አዋረደ:** **ተዋረደ:** **ተዋረደ:** **ወራረደ:** **ሰበረ:** **አሰበረ:** **ተሰበረ:** **ሰባበረ:** **ተሰባበረ:** (**ደረገ:**) **አደረገ:** **ተደረገ:** **አስደረገ:** **አደራረገ:** **ደነዘ:** **አደነዘ:** **ደነዘዘ:** **አደነዘዘ:** **ፈተላ:** **ተፈተላ:** **አስፈተላ:** **ፈተላተላ:** **ተፈተላተላ:** **በረቆ:** **አንጸበረቆ:**

- IX. **አስመዓል**: *caus. & intens.* "he caused to resemble," "dissimulated," "flattered."
- X. **አስተነገረ**: *caus.* "he made speak." **አስተሰረዞ**: "procured forgiveness." **አስተነፈሰ**: *reiter.* "he inhaled and exhaled," "he respired," "breathed."
- XI. **ተዋዋረደ**: *intens., pass., & refl.,* "he was completely humbled," "humbled himself completely."
- XII. **ሰባበረ**: *intens.* "broke into pieces."
- XIII. **አደራረገ**: *intens.* "he performed great things."
- XIV. **ተመለሰ**: *reiter.* "he returned repeatedly;" *i. e.* "walked." **ተመካከረ**: *recipr.* "he consulted with others," "took and gave advice."
- XV. **ተናገረ**: *reiter. & recipr.* "conversed with another," "spoke frequently."
- XVI. **ደነዘዘ**: *intens. & intrans.* "to be blunt," "stiff," "obdurate."
- XVII. **አደነዘዘ**: *trs.* "to blunt," "stiffen," "obdurate."
- XVIII. **ተመለሰ**: *refl. & pass.* "he returned," "was returned."
- XIX. **ተሸማመ**: "he reviled."
- XX. **አደናገረ**: *intens.* "he talked one out of any thing," "dissuaded."
- XXI. **አወሸፍገረ**: "he folded his hands."
- XXI. **ፈተተለ**: "he rubbed thin between his fingers."
- XXII. **ተፈተለለ**: *pass.* "it was rubbed thin between the fingers."
- XXIII. **አንጸበረቀ**: *diminut.* "it shone," "glittered," "sparkled," "re-splended."

These Forms are not of equally frequent occurrence. Those occurring most frequently, are, Nos. I. III. IV. V. VI. VIII. X. XIV. and XV. The rest are more rare.*

5. Observations on this List:—Most of the forms it contains are analogous to the forms of derivation in the Hebrew, the Arabic, and more especially in the Ethiopic Verb; which will be evident from the following remarks:

I. **መለሰ**: comprises the Ethiopic and Arabic I. and II. forms, and the Hebrew *Kal* and *Piel*.

* We beg to observe here, that, on account of the haste in which the Dictionary was prepared for press, the Forms XVI. to XXIII. were not arranged in it under their roots; as the Author was not then aware, that they were simple derivations from the Triliteral Verb. To this conviction he arrived when drawing up this Grammar.

II. **ሳደበ**: of rare occurrence, answers the Ethiopic and Arabic III. form, **جَاعَل**: and **جَاعَل**.

III. **አከበረ**: answers to the Ethiopic IV. and V., and to the Arabic IV.

IV. **ተመለሰ**: corresponds with the Eth. VI. and VII., and with the Arabic V.

V. **አናገረ**: "he made speak," answers the Arabic XI.

VI. **ተናገረ**: "he spoke," answers the Eth. VII. **ተገበረ**: and Arabic VI. **تَفَاعَلَ**.

VII. **ተምዋገተ**: seldom occurs, and has no correspondent in the other languages.

VIII. IX. and X. answer the Ethiopic and Arabic X. **አስተገበረ**: **اسْتَفْعَلَ**.

The rest are peculiar to the Amharic; although modifications of the same forms occur, especially in the Arabic.

6. Before we proceed, we notice the Conjugations of the other classes of Verbs:

I. TRILITERALS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL.

They are affected by the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 2. B. 3. C.

The following list contains their several conjugations:

Radices, **አመነ**: "he believed"; and **አለፈ**: "he passed."

I. **አመነ**: "he believed."

II. **ተመነ**: "he was believed," "credible," "trustworthy"; "he entrusted."

III. **አሳመነ**: "he persuaded," "he made believe."

IV. **አስተመነ**: "he entrusted," "accredited," "attested."

V. **ተላለፈ**: "he trespassed," "varied."

VI. **አስተላለፈ**: *recipr. & trs.* "he made pass in different ways."*

* Other Verbs of this class: **አረመ**: **አረሰ**: **አረዋ**: **አረዘ**: **አረደ**: **አረገ**: **አረጠ**: **ሀረፈ**: **አዋፈ**: **አበረ**: **አበደ**: **አበጠ**: **አተመ**: **አነሰ**: **አነዋ**: **አነጸ**: **አከለ**: **አወዋ**: **አወከ**: **አዘለ**: **አዘነ**: **አደላ**: **አደመ**: **አደረ**: **አደሰ**: **አደነ**: **አደገ**: **አደፈ**: **አገሞ**: **አገዘ**: **አጠረ**: **አጸረ**: **አጠነ**: **አጪደ**: **አጸፈ**: **አጸበ**: **አፈረ**: **ሀበዋ**: **ሀረዋ**: The Dictionary shows, that the original Forms of these Verbs are not all of prima **አ**; but in the Amharic, they may be all comprised in this form.

II. GEMINANT TRILITERALS.

They are originally Biliterals, whose second radical letter has been doubled. See Part I. Ch. VII. 2. D.

List of Triliteral Geminants.

- I. **ለቀቀ**: *intrs. & act.* "went away," "dismissed."
- II. **አረቀቀ**: *trs.* "he thinned," "rarefied."
- III. **ተለቀቀ**: *pass.* "he was dismissed"; *refl.* "he abandoned himself."
- IV. **አለቀቀ**: *intens.* "he yawned." **አሳደደ**: "he persecuted."
- V. **ተሳደደ**: *pass. int.* "he was persecuted."
- VI. **አስመረረ**: *caus.* "he embittered," "exasperated."
- VII. **አንሻተተ**: "he glided down" on his posteriors; "he cheated."
- VIII. **ተንሻተተ**: *pass.* "he was pushed down," "was cheated."
- ተንጋለለ**: "he fornicated."
- IX. **አንጠራራ**: } "stretched himself." *
- X. **ተንጠራራ**: }

III. GEMINANTS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL. †

- I. **አመመ**: *intrs.* "was painful"; *trs.* "gave pain."
- II. **ተመመ**: *pass.* "felt pain."
- III. **አሳመመ**: *caus.* "gave pain," "made sick."
- IV. **አስተመመ**: *sympathetic*, "nursed sick persons."

IV. PERFECT BILITERALS. ‡

- I. **ገነ**: "was beautiful." **ደገ**: "was great."
- II. **አገነ**: "beautified," "praised." **አደገ**: "he grew."
- III. **ተሰጠ**: "was given."

* These Verbs are very numerous. Cf. in the Dictionary **ለቀቀ**: **ለከከ**: **ለጠጠ**: **መረረ**: **መነነ**: **መዘዘ**: **መጸጸ**: **ረቀቀ**: **ዘለለ**: **ሰለለ**: **ሰረረ**: **ሰቀቀ**: **ሰደደ**: **ሰፈፈ**: **ሸለለ**: **ሸረረ**: **ሸተተ**: **ቀለለ**: **ቀደደ**: **በረረ**: **ባነነ**: **ታለለ**: **ነበበ**: **ኖዘዘ**: **ነደደ**: **ነጠጠ**: **ከረረ**: **ከሰሰ**: **ከበበ**: **ከተተ**: **ኩነነ**: **ወረረ**: **ወደደ**: **ዘፈፈ**: **ደሰሰ**: **ደቀቀ**: **ገለለ**: **ጉለለ**: **ገረረ**: **ጎተተ**: **ገደደ**: **ጉደደ**: **ገፈፈ**: **ጠመመ**: **ጠራራ**: **ጸበበ**: **ጠበበ**: **ጸለለ**: **ጸገገ**: **ፈዘዘ**:

† **አመመ**: **አለለ**: **አበበ**: **አከከ**: **አዘዘ**::

‡ **ገነ**: **ደገ**: **መሸ**: **ሸሸ**: **ረዉ**: **ሰጠ**: **ሸረ**: **ሸኘ**: **ቀረ**: **ቀኘ**: **በጀ**: **በጠ**: **ተኘ**: **ነዉ**: **ጠጠ**::

- IV. **አስገነ**: "he beautified," "glorified."
- V. **አሳደገ**: "made grow," "trained," "educated."
- VI. **ገነ**: "flourished."
- VII. **አገነ**: "made to flourish."
- VIII. **ተሰጣጠ**: "to betray each other."

V. IMPERFECT BILITERALS. Prima **አ**::

- I. **አዋ**: "he saw."
- II. **ታዋ**: *pass.* "was seen," "appeared."
- III. **አሳዋ**: *trs.* "made to see," "showed."
- IV. **አስታዋ**: *trs.* "made to be seen," "brought into sight."
- V. **ታያዋ**: *recipr.* "looked at each other," "was over against each other."
"made look at each other."

VI. DEFECTIVE VERBS; i.e. *Verbs which have dropped one or two Radical Letters, either in the middle or at the end.*

1. *Verbs with Absorbed Guttural at the end.*

- I. **ገባ**: *intrs.* "he entered." Eth. **ገብአ**:
- II. **አገባ**: *trs.* "he introduced."
- III. **ተገባ**: "it was proper," "becoming," "it belonged."
- IV. **አጋባ**: *act.* "he married."
- V. **ተጋባ**: *pass.* "was married."
- VI. **አስገባ**: *caus.* "made go in," "introduced."
- VII. **በቃቃ**: *intens.* "was quite sufficient."
- VIII. **አገባባ**: *reiter.* "used to marry," "frequently cohabited," "behaved properly."
- IX. **አጸፈፈ**: *intens.* "he comforted."
- X. **ተጸፈፈ**: *pass.* "was comforted." **ተከፈፈ**: *recipr.* "quarrelled with each other."*

* Of the same class are the following: **ገባ**: ከፈ: ገፈ: ነፈ: ጸላ: ጸረ: መረ: ነሣ: ለማ: ለካ: መላ: በላ: መታ: መጣ: ነካ: ነቃ: መኛ: መካ: ሠራ: ሰረ: ሠዋ: ረባ: ረታ: ረካ: ረደ: ረጋ: ሰላ: ሰማ: ሠሣ: ሰባ: ሰካ: ሰፈ: ቀላ: ቀማ: ቀባ: ቀፈ: ቀደ: ቀጣ: በረ: በባ: በቃ: በካ: በዛ: በዛ: በጣ: ተላ: ተጋ: ተፈ: ነደ: ነጸ: ነጋ: አማ: ከሳ: ከደ: ወቃ: ወዛ: ወረ: ወጋ: ወጣ: ዘማ: ዘረ: ዘጋ: ደፈ: ገሣ: ገረ: ገዛ: ፈረ: &c.

2. *Verbs with Absorbed Guttural in the middle.*

- I. **ማለ**: Eth. **መሐለ**: "he swore."
- II. **አማለ**: *trs.* "made swear," "administered an oath."
- III. **ተማለ**: *pass.* "was sworn."
- IV. **አስማለ**: *trs.* "made swear."
- V. **አጣጣለ**: *frequentat.* "distributed by casting lots."
- VI. **ተማማለ**: *recipr.* "mutually swore," "conspired."
- VII. **ተማለለ**: *intens.* "besought," "adjured."*

3. *Verbs with an Absorbed P: in the middle. †*

- I. **ቬጠ**: *act.* "he sold." **ሔደ**: *neutr.* "he went."
- II. **አሔደ**: *trs.* "he made go," "drove the threshing oxen."
- III. **ተቬሐ**: *pass.* "was sold."
- IV. **ተኻየጠ**: "he traded." **ተኻየደ**: "made a treaty."
- V. **አስሔደ**: *caus.* "made go."

4. *Verbs with an Absorbed W: in the middle †.*

- I. **ቆመ**: *neut.* "he stood."
- II. **አቆመ**: *trs.* "made to stand," "erected."
- III. **ተቆመ**: *pass.* "was erected."
- IV. **ተታወመ**: *intens.* "he withstood," "resisted."
- V. **አስቀ-የ**: *caus.* "he detained," "caused to wait."
- VI. **ተቋቋ-መ**: }
- VII. **ተቋቋመ**: } *intens.* "ultimately resisted."

5. *Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals, derived from Quadrilaterals.* They are but few in number, and only three Conjugations have been discovered §.

- I. **ለለ**: "to be loose," "lax."
- II. **አለለ**: *act.* "to loosen," "slacken."
- III. **ተጋጫ**: *intens.* "to stamp," "pound," "clapper," "to chatter."

* See also the following Verbs: **ላሰ**: **ላቀ**: **ላኸ**: **ላጠ**: **ላፈ**: **ማለ**: **ማረ**: **ማሰ**: **ፍቀ**: **ማገ**: **ማፀ**: **ሣለ**: **ራቀ**: **ራበ**: **ሳለ**: **ሳማ**: **ሳቀ**: **ሳበ**: **ሳተ**: **ሳነ**: **ሸለ**: **ሻረ**: **ሻተ**: **ቻለ**: **ፍደ**: **ካሰ**: **ካደ**: **ዋለ**: **ዋሰ**: **ዋኘ**: **ዋጠ**: **ሣገ**: **ደረ**: **ደሰ**: **ደነ**: **ጋለ**: **ጋተ**: **ጋዘ**: **ጣለ**:

† **ቬጠ**: **ሔደ**: (**ኪደ**): **ሌለ**: **ቬነ**: **ጤሰ**: **ፈዘ**:

‡ **ሆነ**: **ሞቀ**: **ሞተ**: **ረጠ**: **ሾመ**: **ቆመ**: **ቆየ**: **ፍረ**: **ከረ**: **ዘረ**: **ጸመ**:

§ **ለለ**: **ራራ**: **ሳሳ**: **ባባ**: **ዋጀ**:

6. *Verbs doubly imperfect.*

(a) Beginning with an **አ**: and having an Absorbed Guttural at the end. There are but few (**አዋ**: and **አለ**: not being included): **አጣ**: **አላ**:

- I. **አጣ**: *negat.* "to want."
- II. **ተጣ**: *neg. pass.* "to be wanted."
- III. **አሳጣ**: *caus.* "to deprive."

(b) *Beginning with **ዋ**: which absorbs a Guttural.*

- I. **ያዘ**: *Eth.* **አንዘ**: *act.* "to seize."
- II. **አያዘ**: *trs.* "caused another to seize."
- III. **ተያዘ**: *pass.* "was seized."
- IV. **አስያዘ**: *caus.* "caused to seize," "betrayed."
- V. **ተያያዘ**: *pass. frequentat. & recipr.* "was frequently or alternately seized," "seized frequently," "completely," or "reciprocally."

(c) *Various forms of the Verb **አለ**: "To say."*

Not to be confounded with the Auxiliary **አለ**: "To be." Its forms are partly derived from **አለ**:, partly from **ጥላለ**: *Eth.*

- I. **አለ**: "he said."
- II. **አበለ**: "to deceive by talking."
- III. **ተገለ**: "to be said," "called."
- IV. **ተበለ**: "to be deceived."
- V. **ተገለ**: "to rumour in public."
- VI. **ተገበለ**: }
- VII. **ተገገለ**: } *recipr.* "to say to each other."
- VIII. **አገበለ**: "he persuaded."
- IX. **ተለለ**: "he was talked into any thing," "was persuaded."
- X. **አተለለ**: "he persuaded," "cheated by talking."

(d) *Conjugation of the Verb **ተወ**: and **መጣ**:*VII. *VARIOUS CONJUGATIONS OF QUADRILITERAL AND PLURILITERAL VERBS.*1. *Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals.*

Stems: **ለመለመ**: "to be green." **ለቀለቀ**: "to bedaub." **ነቀነቀ**: "to shake." **ነጸነጸ**: "to cudgel." **ቀሰቀሰ**: "to excavate." **ቀጠቀጠ**: "to bruise." (**ከረከረ**:)

- I. **ለመለመ**: *neut.* "it was green," "fresh."
- II. **አለመለመ**: *trs.* "he made green," "verdant," "refreshed."

- III. **ጥለቃለቀ**: *pass.* "he was bedaubed."
- IV. **አነቃነቀ**: *act. intens.* "he shook."
- V. **ጥለቃለቀ**: *refl.* "bedaubed," "washed himself."
- VI. **አስለቃለቀ**: *caus.* "he caused bedaubing."
- VII. **አንበደበደ**: *act.* "beat," "shook."
- VIII. **ጥንቀጠቀጠ**: *pass. & neutr.* "trembled."
- IX. **አንቀሳቀሰ**: *act.* "he stirred," "moved."
- X. **ጥንቀሳቀሰ**: *pass. & neutr.* "was moved," "moved."
- XI. **አሳንቀሳቀሰ**: *trs.* "he moved."*

2. *Derivates from Triliterals having one Radical doubled and transposed.*

- I. **ደሉደሞ**: *neut.* "it was blunt."
- II. **አደሉደሞ**: *trs.* "he blunted."
- III. **ጥደሉደሞ**: *pass.* "was blunted."
- IV. **አከፍወኑ**: *trs.* "he gave success."
- V. **ጥከፍወኑ**: *neut.* "he succeeded," "prospered."
- VI. **አንገረገበ**: *neutr.* "it became knotty."

But few verbs belong to this class.

3. *Geminants.*

We rank under this class only such forms as cannot, with our present knowledge of the language, be considered to belong to Form XVI. of the regular Triliteral Verb. This class is but small:

- I. **ኩበለለ**: *intrans.* "he fled," "escaped."
- II. **ተደመሰሰ**: *pass.* "was destroyed."

* The Verbs of this class are very numerous. The following do belong to them:

መረመረ: መነመነ: ረበረበ: ሰበሰበ: ቀለቀለ: ቀ-ረቀ-ረ: ቀ-ሰቀ-ሰ:
በረበረ: በሰበሰ: ጠመጠመ: ጉበጉበ: በዘበዘ: በጠበጠ: ተረተረ:
ጠቀጠቀ: ጉነጉነ: ተበተበ: ተከተከ: ጠረጠረ: ተፈተፈ: ጠበጠበ:
ገዘገዘ: ጠፈጠፈ: ጉደጉደ: ነሰነሰ: ነዘነዘ: ገለገለ: ከለከለ:
ጠለጠለ: ከረከረ: ኩረኩረ: ኩደኩደ: ወለወለ: ወዘወዘ:
ዉመዉመ: ዉበዉበ: ጦሉጦሉ: ወረወረ: ዘበዘበ: ዘፈዘፈ:
ደለደለ: ደረደረ: ደበደበ: ዉፈዉፈ: ደፈደፈ: ደነደነ: ጀፈጀፈ: ገመ
ገመ: ጉረጉረ: ገሰገሰ: ፈለፈለ: ፈረፈረ: ፈገፈገ:: And the Augmented Forms:
አሸከረከረ: (for አሸከረከረ:) ተቅበዘበዘ::

- III. **ተገማልል**: *neutr.* "walked nimbly," "affectedly," "proudly."
- IV. **አስጠነቀቀ**: *trs.* "he warned," "cautioned."
- V. **አንከባልል**: *act.* "he rolled about."
- VI. **ተንከባልል**: *pass.* "was rolled about."

4. *Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals.*

- I. **መሰገነ**: *neutr.* "was glorious."
- II. **አመሰገነ**: *trs.* "he glorified."
- III. **ተመሰገነ**: *pass.* "he was glorified."
- IV. **አሰፋቦተ**: *intens.* "he dismissed."
- V. **ተሰፋቦተ**: *pass.* "he was dismissed," "took his leave."
- VI. **አስመሰገነ**: *caus.* "he caused to glorify."
- VII. **ገልገበጠ**: *intens.* "he overthrew completely."
- VIII. **ተገልገበጠ**: *pass. intens.* "he was completely overthrown."
- IX. **ተሰፋባቦተ**: *recipr. & reiter.* "took leave from each other."*

SECTION III.

On the Flexion of Verbs.

The Flexion of Verbs treats on their *Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.*

1. *Moods of the Amharic Verb.*

The Amharic Verb has Seven Moods: (a) the *Indicative*; (b) the *Contingent*; (c) the *Subjunctive*; (d) the *Constructive*; (e) the *Imperative*; (f) the *Infinitive*; (g) the *Participle*.

* 1. This class is most numerous, and comprises a great variety of Verbs, as the following List will show: መረኮዘ: መሰከረ: መሰከወ: መነኩሰ: መነዘሀ: ሰበቀለ: ሰነከለ: ሰነዘረ: ሰነገለ: ሰነጠቀ: ሸመገለ: ሸነከረ: ሸነገለ: ቀለበሰ: ቀለወጠ: ቀለጠፈ: ቀመጠለ: ቀ-ረጠመ: ቀጣጠረ: በረከተ: ተረገጉመ: ተነኩለ: ቸነከረ: አመለከ: አነከሰ: አነጠሰ: ወነጀለ: (ወነገለ) ዘነበለ: ዘነጉረ: ደነቀረ: ደነዘዘ: ደነገጠ: ጉለመሰ: ጉነቀለ: ጉነበሰ: ጉነጀለ: ጉነጸፈ: ጠረቀመ: ጠፋወተ: ጨነገፈ: ጸወለገ: ፈነተረ: ፈነቀለ::

2. Most of the forms comprised in this List are Derivative; either from Nouns, as መሰከረ: መነኩሰ: ቸነከረ: በረከተ: or, as most of the rest, from Triliteral Verbs. The use of the liquid **ገ**: in this amplification of forms, is remarkable; e.g. አነጠሰ: is from the Arabic عطف, ሰነበተ: from the Hebrew נבש, ሰነጠቀ: from the Eth. ሰጠቀ:: ሰነዘረ: from the Eth. ሰዘረ: &c.

A. The *Indicative* Mood has nothing particular. It has two Tenses, the Preterite and the Present (or Future); besides which, other Tenses are formed by the Contingent and the Constructive, in connexion with Auxiliaries.

B. The *Contingent* is the simple verbal form with the Personal Preformatives and Terminations, and serves for the Indicative as well as for the Subjunctive, according as it is either, (1) Simple; or (2) has Conjunctions prefixed, and what the nature of those Conjunctions is; or (3) whether any, and what sort of Auxiliary, is attached to it. (See pp. 66, 67.)

C. The *Conjunctive* or *Subjunctive* Mood is not used in the Amharic, except for the purpose of expressing a desire, or request, or obligation. Its peculiarity consists in its Radicals, after the prefixion of the Personal Serviles, assuming the form of the Imperative. (See pp. 68, 69.)

D. A curious Mood, and peculiar to the Amharic and Tigrê languages, having its beginning undeveloped in the Ethiopic Infinitive, is the *Constructive*. It is formed by the simple root of the verb with Personal Afformatives; and has four forms; one simple, one augmented, and two compound forms. (See pp. 70, 71.)

E. The form of the *Imperative* (its nature being the same, as in other languages) is short. (See p. 71.)

F. The *Infinitive*, or Verbal Substantive, is formed by the prefixion of **oo**; to the Simple Form.

G. The *Participle* presents five; viz. three Simple, and two Compound Forms. The three former, partaking of a nominal character, have been exhibited in the Table of Derivative Nouns: the two latter are formed by the Finite Verb Preterite and Contingent, to which certain Preformatives are prefixed; and they retain their flexibility, i.e. capability of being conjugated. Besides this, they are all declinable. (See pp. 72, 73.)

We come now to speak,

II. Of the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.

They are not so exactly distinguished in the Amharic as in our European Languages: in fact, the Abyssinians have not, strictly speaking, more than two divisions of time; i.e. the *Past* and the *Present*; the *Present* being used also for the *Future*. The *Past* is subdivided into the Perfect, and Imperfect or Pluperfect; the Perfect being rendered by the simple Preterite form, and the Imperfect or Pluperfect, (which are not distinguished from each other) being composed either of the Contingent or the Simple Constructive, with the Preterite Auxiliary **in**፤. The *Present*, which might be, perhaps with propriety, called Aorist, because it is appli-

cable to the Future as well as to the Present Tense, is a form composed of the Contingent and the Auxiliary **አለ**:: In order to distinguish the Future from the Present, where the context is not in itself clear enough, certain phrases are adopted which leave no doubt that the time is yet to come in which the action &c. of the subject is to take place. But more of this afterwards. (See p. 66.)

3. The *Number* of Conjugation is but twofold, Singular and Plural.

4. *The Persons.*

There are, in reality, not more than *three* for each Number; viz. the person speaking, the person spoken to, and the person spoken of; but the grammatical forms are more, as has been shown under the article of Pronouns, Chap. III.; namely, seven forms for the Singular, and three for the Plural. Now the Semitic Languages have this in common, that the personal distinctions in the Conjugations of Verbs are expressed by certain letters affixed or prefixed, or both, to the Radicals of the Verb; and in so doing, the act of Conjugation is accomplished. We call the prefixed letters *Preformatives*, and the affixed ones *Afformatives*. The following List exhibits them.

(a) *Preformatives.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
		3.	Com. Gender.
3d pers. masc.	ሂ —:	3.	ሂ —:
.. .. fem.	ት —:		
2d .. m. & f.	ት —:	2.	ት —:
.. .. hon. 1.	ሂ —:		
.. 2.	ት —:		
1st .. com.	አ —:	1.	አን —:

(b) *Afformatives.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.				
	Pret.	Pres. Subj.	Constr.		Com.	Pret.	Pres. Subj.	Constr.
3. masc.	none.	none.	—o.	3.	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ሐ:
.. fem.	—ት:	.. ..	—³ ሐ.					
2. masc.	—ህ:	.. ..	—³ ሐ:	2.	— ³ ሐትህ:	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ሐትህ:
.. fem.	—ት:	.. ፤	— ³ ሐ:					
.. hon. 1.	— ³ ህ	.. ³ ህ	— ³ ሐ:					
.. .. 2.	— ³ ሐትህ:	.. ³ ህ	— ³ ሐትህ:					
1. com.	—ህ:	.. ..	—³ ሐ.	1.	—ት:	none	— ³ ሐ:	— ³ ሐ:

What hitherto has been said, may suffice for the preliminaries: we therefore now proceed to the *Conjugation of the Verbs*.

SECTION IV.

Conjugation of Verbs.

Before we enter upon the conjugation of the *Regular Verb*, we give the conjugation of the two *Auxiliary Verbs*:

አል: he is.

ነበረ: he was;

and of the Irregular and Defective Verb Substantive, **ነው**: "he is."

A. **አል**: Eth. **ሀለወ**: contr. **ሀሉ**: "he is," "there is" (French, *il y a*), is used only in the Present; but that has a Preterite form.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Common.	Common.	
3d pers.	አል : he is.	አለች : she is.		አሉ : { they are, he (hon.) is.	
2d ..	አለህ :	አለሽ : thou art.		አለችሁ : you are.	
.. .. hon. 1.	.. . . . .	.. . . . .	አሉ : } you		
.. .. 2.	.. . . . .	.. . . . .	አለችሁ : } are.		
1st ..	.. . . . .	.. . . . .	አለሁ : I am.	አለን : we are.	

NOTE 1. — This verb is not to be confounded with the Irregular Verb **አለ**: "he said"; which will be given, when we treat of the Irregular Verbs in general.

2. The 3d pers. sing. and plur., combined with Suffixed Pronouns, have the same signification as "*est*" and "*sunt*" in the Latin, with the Dative of the Personal Pronoun; e.g. *Mihi est*, "I have." So in the Amharic,

ነር: አለኝ: I have (possess) money.

ልጆች: አሉት: he has (possesses) children.

3. As Auxiliary, the 3d pers. sing. masc. is changed into **አል**: e.g.

ይላል: for **ይል: አል**: he says.

ተቀምጥዋል: for **ተቀምጦ: አል**: he is sitting.

B. **ነበረ**: "he was," is used as Auxiliary for the Past Tenses in the Indicative and Subjunctive. It has only the Preterite.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Common.	
3.	ነበረ : } he (ነበረ:) } was.	ነበረች : she was.		ነበሩ : they were.	
2.	ነበርህ :	ነበርሽ : { thou wast.		ነበሩትሁ : { you were.	
.. hon. 1.	.. . . . .	.. . . . .	ነበሩ : you were.		
.. .. 2.	.. . . . .	.. . . . .	ነበሩትሁ : { you were.		
1.	.. . . . .	.. . . . .	ነበርሁ : I was.	ነበርነ : we were.	

NOTE.—When used as an Auxiliary, **ነበር**: serves often for any person Singular or Plural; *e.g.*

ተቀምጠው: **ነበር**: they were sitting.

ትመጣ: **ነበር**: thou wouldst come.

C. **ነው**: *He is.*

This verb is singularly anomalous. It consists of merely one radical letter **ነ**:, to which the Verbal Suffixes are attached, instead of Personal Affirmatives. Is used only in one form, which we may call the Preterite of the Indicative, because it resembles that more than any other form.

SINGULAR.			Common.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	
3d pers. ነው : he is.	ናት : she is.		ናቸው : they are
2d pers. ኑ : thou art.	ነሽ : thou art.		ናቸሁ : you are
.. .. hon. 1.		ናቸሁ : }	} you are.
.. .. 2.		ነዋ : }	
1st pers.		ነኝ : I am.	ነኝ : we are.

This is the regular form of this anomalous verb. Deviations are these: **ነዋ**:, for the 3d pers. sing. masc. interrogative, "Is he?" In the Shoa Dialect, **ነውጂ**: for the regular **ነውን**: *e.g.*

እንደት: **ነዋ**: How is it? for **እንደት**: **ነው**::

A second deviation is **ነት**:, in the Shoa Dialect, "She is," for **ናት**::

1. *Conjugation of the Perfect and Triliteral Verbs.*

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Simple form **ከበረ**: neut. "He was honourable." **መለሰ**: act. "hé turned." intrs. "he answered." **ሰጸበ**: trs. "he scolded," "blasphemed."

(a) *Indicative Mood.*

α. PRETERITE.

SINGULAR.			Common.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	
3d pers. ከበረ : { he was ho- nourable.	ከበረች : { she was ho- nourable.		} you were
2d .. ከበረህ :	ከበረሽ : { thou wast ho- nourable.		
.. hon. 1.		ከበረ : }	} honourable.
.. .. 2.		ከበረችሁ : }	
1.		ከበረሁ : I was honourable.	
PLURAL.			Common.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	
3d pers. ከበሩ : they were honourable.			
2d .. ከበሩችሁ : you were honourable.			
1st .. ከበርን : we were honourable.			

β. PRESENT AND FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Masc.			Fem.	Common.	
3d p.	ይከብራል፡	{ he is, will be hon.	ትከብራለች፡	{ she is, will be hon.	
2.	ትከብራለህ፡		ትከብርያለሽ፡	{ thou art, wilt be hon.	
.. hon. 1.	..			ይከብራል፡	{ you are, or will be hon.
.. .. 2.	..			ትከብራለችህ፡	
1.	..			እከብራለሁ፡	{ I am, shall be hon.

PLURAL.

Common.

3d pers. ይከብራሉ፡ they are, will be honourable.

2d .. ትከብራለችሁ፡ you are, will be honourable.

1st .. እንከብራለን፡ we are, shall be honourable.

NOTE 1.—Whether this form, when it occurs, is intended for the Present or for the Future Tense, generally depends on the context. In order, however, to leave no doubt when they speak of future things, they use the simple contingent form with additional particles; *e.g.* እከብር፡ ዘንድ፡ አለኝ፡ “I have (am) to be honourable.” እከብር፡ ዘንድ፡ ጊዜ፡ አለኝ፡ “time is for me (to come) that I am to be honourable,” &c.

2. Personal Suffixes, and sometimes the Conjunction **ም**., are infixed between the Simple Form and the Auxiliary.

(b.) CONTINGENT.

α. Simple.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Common.	Common.
3d pers.	ይከብር፡	ትከብር፡	ይከብሩ፡
2d ..	ትከብር፡	ትከብሪ፡	ትከብሩ፡
.. hon. 1.	..	..	ይከብሩ፡
.. .. 2.	..	..	ትከብሩ፡
1st pers.	..	..	እንከብር፡

As this form is used for both the Indicative and the Subjunctive, as well as for the formation of Participles, we have given no translation of it; but shall present a few instances here, to illustrate its use:

ደክብር፡ ዘንድ፡ in order that he may be honourable.

ሊክብር፡ that he may be honourable.

እንደክብር፡ that he is honourable.

ቢክብር፡ or **ደክብር፡ እንደሆን፡** if he is (be) honourable.

ኪክብር፡ than that he should be honourable.

ሲክብር፡ while he is honourable.

የሚክብር፡ he that is honourable.

አይክብርም፡ he is not honourable.

The Present and Future of the Indicative, also, is a composition of the Contingent with the Auxiliary **አለ**፡ which is omitted whenever the word receives any augmentation at the beginning or at the end, except Suffixes or Copulative Conjunctions.

β. COMPOUND.

SINGULAR.

Masc.		Fem.		Common.
3d p.	ደክብር፡ ነበር፡	{ he was, had been hon.	ትክብር፡ ነበረች፡	{ she was, had been hon.
2.	ትክብር፡ ነበርህ፡	ትክብሪ፡ ነበርሽ፡	{ thou wast, hadst been hon.	
..	hon. 1.	ደክብሩ፡ ነበሩ፡		{ you were, had been hon.
..	.. 2.	ትክብሩ፡ ነበሩትህ፡		
1.	. . . . .		እክብር፡ ነበርሁ፡	{ I was, had been hon.

PLURAL.

Common.

3d pers. **ደክብሩ፡ ነበሩ፡** they were, or had been honourable.

2d .. **ትክብሩትህ፡ ነበሩትህ፡** you were, or had been honourable.

1st .. **እንክብር፡ ነበርን፡** we were, or had been honourable.

This form is used for the Subjunctive, as well as for the Indicative.

(c) *Subjunctive Mood.*

Is characterized by having the form of the Imperative Mood with the Personal Preformatives.

SINGULAR.		
Masc.	Fem.	Com.
3d pers. ይክበር : { let him be hon.	ትክበር : { let her be hon.	
2. .. ትክበር :	ትክበሪ : { mayest thou be hon.	
.. hon. 1.	ይክበሩ : { may you be hon.	
.. .. 2.	ትክበሩ :	
1.	እክበር : { let me, may I, be hon.	
PLURAL. Common.		
3d pers. ይክበሩ :	may they, let them be honourable.	
2. .. ትክበሩ :	may you be honourable.	
1. .. እክበር :	may we, let us be honourable.	

NOTE 1.—As the Subjunctive is^{*} so nearly related to the Imperative, always expressing a wish, a request, or indirect command, it is natural that the Second Person Singular, in its direct form, and the same person in the Plural, is less frequently used than the remaining forms; for they use more generally the Imperative.

2. Several verbs are destitute of this form, and they use the Simple Contingent. It may therefore be of service to the Student, to give a list of those verbs of this class which have this form; and another of those which have not.

VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM.

ለመጠ፡ ለቀጠ፡ ለበሰ፡ ለበጠ፡ ለገመ፡
ለገሰ፡ ለገደ፡ ለገጠ፡ መለከ፡ መለጠ፡
መረገ፡ መረጠ፡ መሰለ፡ መከረ፡ መከነ፡
መጠነ፡ ሠለጠ፡ ሠመረ፡ ሠረቀ፡ ሠረፀ፡
ሠቀዞ፡ ሠጠመ፡ ረከሰ፡ ረከ-ሰ፡ ረከ-ዘ፡
ረዘመ፡ ረገመ፡ ረገጠ፡ ረገፈ፡ ረጠበ፡ ረፈደ፡
ረፈቀ፡ ሰለበ፡ ሰማራ፡ ሰረቀ፡ ሰረዞ፡
ሰረፈ፡ ሰቀለ፡ ሰበረ፡ ሰበቀ፡ ሰበከ፡
ሰከረ፡ ሰደበ፡ ሰገደ፡ ሰፈረ፡ ሸመቀ፡
ሸመነ፡ ሸከረ፡ ሸከ-ረ፡ ሸገተ፡ ሸፈጠ፡
ቀለጠ፡ ቀመሰ፡ ቀሠጠ፡ ቀሠፈ፡ ቀ-ረሰ፡
ቀረበ፡ ቀ-ረበ፡ ቀረጠ፡ ቀ-ረጠ፡ ቀረፈ፡

VERBS WITHOUT IT.

ለመነ፡ ለመደ፡ ለሰነ፡
ለቀመ፡ ለወሰ፡ ለወጠ፡
ለዘበ፡ ለጉመ፡ መለሰ፡
መረቀ፡ መረዘ፡ ሞከረ፡
መዘነ፡ መገለ፡ መገበ፡
መገተ፡ ሰነጋ፡ ሰነፈ፡
ሰወረ፡ ሸለመ፡ ሸመተ፡
ሸሸገ፡ ሸቀበ፡ ሸገ-ረ፡
ሸፈነ፡ ቀለመ፡ ቀለበ፡
ቀ-ለፈ፡ ቀቀለ፡ ቀደሰ፡
ቀ-ራረ፡ በረተ፡ በቀለ፡
በቀ-ለ፡ በደለ፡ በደረ፡

VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM.

ቀ-ሰለ: ቀበረ: ቀዘነ: ቀዘፈ: ቀደመ:
 ቀጠለ: ቀጠረ: ቀ-ጠረ: ቀጠነ: በለጠ:
 በረቀ: በረደ: በሰለ: በቀለ: (grow) በተነ:
 በጠሰ: ተመሰ: ተረዘ: ተረፈ: ተከለ:
 ነቀለ: ነቀሰ: ነቀዘ: ነቀፈ: ነከረ: ነከሰ:
 ነደለ: ነደቀ: ነደፈ: ነገረ: ነገሠ: ነገደ: ነጠረ:
 ነጠቀ: ነጸረ: ነጸፈ: ነፈሰ: ነፈቀ: ነፈገ:
 ከመረ: ከረመ: ከበረ: ከበደ: ከደነ:
 ከፈለ: ከፈተ: ከፈነ: ወለሰ: ወለደ:
 ወረሰ: ወረደ: ወሰነ: ወሰደ: ወቀረ:
 ወቀጠ: ወከለ: ወደሰ: ወደቀ: ወገረ:
 ወገዘ: ዘለቀ: ዘመረ: ዘመደ: ዘረፈ:
 ዘከረ: ዘገመ: ዘገነ: ዘገዞ: ዘፈረ: ደረሰ:
 ደረቀ: ደበቀ: ደነዘ: ደነፈ: ደከመ: ደገመ:
 ደፈነ: ገለጠ: ገመረ: ገመደ: ገረመ: ጉረሰ:
 ገረፈ: ገበረ: ገበዘ: ጉበጠ: ጉተረ: ጉተነ:
 ገነዘ: ገነዘ: ገዘረ: ገዘተ: ገደለ: ጉደለ:
 ገደመ: ገደረ: ገደፈ: ገጠመ: ገጸበ: ጠለቀ:
 ጠለፈ: ጠመቀ: ጠረቀ: ጠቀመ: ጠቀሰ:
 ጸደቀ: ጸደፈ: ፈለቀ: ፈለጠ: ፈረሰ: ፈረደ:
 ፈቀደ: ፈተለ: ፈተነ: ፈተገ: ፈጠረ: ፈጠነ:
 ፈጸመ::

VERBS WITHOUT IT.

ተከሰ: ተከዘ: ትከለ:
 ትገረ: ነወረ: ነወጠ:
 ወቀሰ: ወገደ: ወፈረ:
 ዘለፈ: ዘረጋ: ዘነመ:
 ዘነጋ: ዛፈነ: ደመቀ:
 ደረበ: ደቀሰ: ደነቀ:
 ደወለ: ደጉሰ: ደገፈ:
 ደፈረ: ደፈቀ: ደመረ:
 ገመሰ: ገሠጸ: ጉበኘ:
 ገገረ: ጠረሰ: ጠቀረ:
 ጠበሰ: ጠበቀ: ጠዞቀ:
 ጠገነ: ጨለመ: ጨለጠ:
 ጨመረ: ጨመተ: ጨረሰ:
 ጨበጠ: ጨነቀ: ጨከነ:
 ጨፈረ: ጨፈነ: ጸመደ:
 ጸረበ: ጸረገ: ጸዞፈ: ጸገበ:
 ፀነሰ: ፈለሰ: ፈለገ:
 ፈወሰ::

3. In verbs whose first radical has a diphthong, the latter is shortened into that diphthong which answers the sixth vowel order; e.g. **ደቀረጥ**: “let him cut,” from **ቀ-ረጠ**:: **አትጉደል**: “do not be deficient.”

4. The Subjunctive is so nearly related to the Imperative, that it yields all its forms to serve the latter, where that is deficient. So in the negative orders, prohibitions or warnings, where the Imperative cannot be used for having no Servile Preformatives; e.g.

አትገነር: do not tell.

አትወደቅ: do not fall.

አትገደል: do not kill.

አትቀረጥ: do not cut.

(d) *Constructive Mood.*

This is a singular Mood, which has nothing corresponding, either in our European or in the other Semitic Languages; although its form, as

far as the Simple one is concerned, answers the Ethiopic Infinitives **ገብር**: and **ገብር**:; but this Mood is not an Infinitive. It has nothing of a Substantive character; whereas the Infinitive is the first Verbal Substantive, possessing both the characters of Substantive and Verb. Nor is there any other Mood to which it exactly corresponds: neither Participle nor Gerund, nor Finite Verb, will answer it; although it may be occasionally translated by either, and sometimes by an Adverb. It occupies an intermediate station between the Infinitive and the Finite Verb; has four forms, one of which is Simple, one Augmented, and two Compound; and is flexible, like the Finite Verb, having Affirmatives resembling the Suffixed Pronouns, partly of the Noun, and partly of the Verb. The Simple form is used for amplifying; the other forms, on account of the auxiliaries which are attached to them, for constituting sentences. When the nature of this Mood is understood, we hope the designation *Constructive* will be justified; not having been able to fix upon any better.

The Simple form **ከብር**: (a modification of the radix **ከብር**: "honour"), which may be considered as containing the idea of an agent, and of an action, or a concrete being, and an abstract state or condition, &c., assumes peculiar forms of Pronouns; which must not be taken as Possessive (Nominal), but as Personal (Verbal); nor as the other Verbal Suffixes which are in the Accusative; but they are Nominatives. Here it is:

α. FIRST FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.

Simple Form.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com	Com.
3d p. ከብር : { he being hon.	ከብረ : she being honourable.		ከብረው : they
2. ከብረህ :	ከብረሽ : thou being honourable		ከብረችሁ : you
.. hon. 1.	ከብረው : { you be-		ከብረን : we
... 2.	ከብረችሁ : { ing hon.		
1.	ከብረ : I being hon.		

being honourable.

The Augmented form has become Finite by the Auxiliary **አለ**: being attached to the Simple form; but not in the same manner as it attaches itself to the Contingent, in constituting the Present and Future Tense. It serves for the Past and the Present Tenses.

β. SECOND OR AUGMENTED FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.

Constructive Aorist (Present and Perfect).

SINGULAR.			FLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.
3. ከብርዋል: { he is (was) hon. }	ከብረልኝ: she is (was) hon.		ከብረዋል: they
2. ከብረሃል:	ከብረኸል: thou art (wast) hon.		ከብረኹኋል: you
.. hon. 1.	ከብረዋል: { you were		
.. .. 2.	ከብረኹኋል: { hon.		
1.	{ ከብርዋሁ: for ከብረ: ኋሁ: I am (was) h.		ከብረናል: we

are, or were honourable.

γ. COMPOUND CONSTRUCTIVE FORMS.

N *Constructive Perfect.*

SINGULAR.	
Masc.	Fem.
3. { ከብር: { he was, or had ነር: { been hon. }	ከብረ: { she was, or ነርኝ: { had been hon. }
2. { ከብረህ: { thou wast, ነርህ: { hadst been hon. }	ከብረኸ: { thou wast, ነርኸ: { hadst been hon. }
.. hon. 1.	Common. ከብረወ: ነር: { you were, 2. ከብረኹህ: ነርኹህ: { had been hon. }
1.	ከብረ: ነርሁ: I was, had been h.
PLURAL.	
Common.	
3d pers. ከብረው: ነር: they	{ were, or had been honourable.
2d .. ከብረኹህ: ነርኹህ: you	
1st .. ከብረን: ነርን: we	

This form is used merely for the Indicative. Observe, also, that ነር: may be used throughout, without any change, as remarked in the Note to the conjugation of ነር: p. 65.

2. *Constructive Form of Uncertainty.*

SINGULAR.

3d masc.	ከብር፡ ይሆናል፡	he may	} probably be honourable.
.. fem.	ከብረ፡ ትሆናለች፡	she may	
2d masc.	ከብረህ፡ ትሆናለህ፡	} thou mayest	
.. fem.	ከብረሽ፡ ትሆናለሽ፡		
.. hon.1.	ከብረው፡ ይሆናሉ፡	} you may	
.. 2.	ከብረችሁ፡ ትሆናለችሁ፡		
1st com.	ከብረ፡ እሆናለሁ፡	I may	

PLURAL.

3d masc.	ከብረው፡ ይሆናሉ፡	they	} may be honourable.
2d ..	ከብረችሁ፡ ትሆናለችሁ፡	you	
1st com.	ከብረን፡ እንሆናለን፡	we	

(e) *Imperative.*

The Imperative has two forms; one which has the first Radical in the sixth, and the second in the first order; and another which has the first Radical in the first, and the second in the sixth order. All those verbs which have the Subjunctive form, have the Imperative in the first; and the rest have it in the second form. As a specimen of the first, we take the Imperative of ከብረ፡; and of the other, that of ጠባቂ፡. It is used only in the Second Person Singular and Plural.

α. *Form ህህህ፡*

SINGULAR.

Masc. ከብር፡ } be honourable.
Fem. ከብረ፡ }

PLURAL.

Com. ከብሩ፡ be honourable.

Diphthong form: ቀ፡ጠር፡ ቀ፡ጠሪ፡ *sing.* ቀ፡ጠሩ፡ *pl.* "count."

β. *Form ሀሀሀ፡*

SINGULAR.

Masc. ጠብቅ፡ } do thou observe.
Fem. ጠብቁ፡ }

PLURAL.

Com. ጠብቁ፡ do you observe.

(f) *Infinitive Mood.*

Is formed by prefixing ሙ፡ to the Simple root; and it presents the two forms: ሙከብር፡ "to be honourable;" and ሙጠባቂ፡ "to observe." With Prima Rad. Diphthong: ሙቀ፡ጠር፡ "to number." ሙቀ፡ፈር፡ "to till," "dig."

(g) *Participles.*

α. Simple: *act.* ከባሪ፡ one who is honoured.

pass. ጥማቂ፡ any thing dipped.

Eth. *pass.* ከብር፡ honoured.

β. *Compound Part., Adjective, or Relative Participle.*

ⲛ *For the Preterite*—Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **ⲡ** to the Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3. masc. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: he } who was
 .. fem. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲥ**: she } hon.
 2. masc. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲩ**: } thou who
 .. fem. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲩ**: } wast hon.
 .. hon. 1. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: } you who
 2. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲥ**: } were hon.
 1. com. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: I who was hon.

PLURAL.

3. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: they who were hon.
 2. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲥ**: you who were hon.
 1. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: we who were hon.

ⲛ *For the Present*—Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **ⲡ** to the forms of the Contingent Mood.

SINGULAR.

3. masc. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: he } who is
 .. fem. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲥ**: she } hon.
 2. masc. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲩ**: } thou who
 .. fem. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲩ**: } art hon.
 .. hon. 1. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: } you who
 2. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲥ**: } are hon.
 1. com. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: I who am hon.

PLURAL.

3. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: they who are hon.
 2. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁⲥ**: you who are hon.
 1. **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: we who are hon.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Simple Participial forms are used in their verbal as well as in a nominal character. This is evident in Active Verbs; *e.g.* **ⲙⲓⲛⲁ**: “observing,” “watching,” “guarding”; and “guardian,” “observer”; which may have its object connected with it either in the Genitive Case, when it is considered as a Noun, *e.g.* **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: **ⲙⲓⲛⲁ**: “a keeper, guardian, of sheep,” “shepherd”; or in the Accusative Case, **ⲡⲏⲛⲁ**: **ⲙⲓⲛⲁ**: “one keeping, watching the sheep.” The Passive forms are resolvable by the two compound forms (ⲛ) and (ⲛ) of the Passive Conjugations.

2. The two compound forms of the Relative or Adjective Participle evince their Participial character (which consists in partaking—*participiando*—of the properties of the Verb as well as of the Noun, and forming a connecting link between both) by the position in which they stand when connected with Nouns, as Adjectives; by the treatment they experience from other Transitive Verbs, when being put into the Accusative Case; and by the influence they themselves exercise on Nouns and Pronouns. As this subject, however, belongs more properly to the Syntax, we shall leave it for the present.

ፀገዉ፡ I pounding &c. **ፀገጢ፡**

ፀገዉለሁ፡ I am (was) pounding . . **ፀገጥዖለሁ፡፡**

8. **ገሠጸ፡** "he reproved," "chastised." **ሠረፀ፡** "he proceeded." The changes are the same as in No. 7.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

whose characteristic is a prolongation of the first radical, by which it is changed from the first into the fourth form. Its force is intensity of the idea of the original form.

ሳደበ፡ he scolded exceedingly.

Its difference in form, from the First Conjugation, is as follows:

1. It retains the first long radical throughout; on this account, it
2. Has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive, but is served by the Contingent Mood.
3. In the Imperative, the first radical is long, of the fourth: the second short, of the sixth order.
4. In the Infinitive, the first radical is of the fourth; the second, as in all the conjugations, of the first order.

The mode of conjugating being the same as in the first species, we shall give only the Third Person, Singular and Plural, in those Moods and Tenses which have it.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers.	SINGULAR.	3d pers.	PLURAL.
ሳደበ፡	he scolded exceedingly &c.	ሳደቡ፡	they scolded exceedingly &c.

Present and Future.

ደሳደብል፡	{ he scolds exceedingly &c.	ደሳደቡል፡	{ they scold exceed- ingly &c.
---------------	--------------------------------	---------------	-----------------------------------

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

ደሳደብ፡	ደሳደቡ፡
--------------	--------------

Compound Preterite.

ደሳደብ፡ ነበረ፡	{ he scolded, had scolded, was scold- ing, would scold, would have scold- ed exceedingly.	ደሳደቡ፡ ነበሩ፡፡	he scolded, &c.
-------------------	---	--------------------	-----------------

Compound of Uncertainty.

ደሳደብ፡	{ he may (perhaps) scold	ደሳደቡ፡ ይሆናሉ፡፡
ይሆናል፡	{ exceedingly &c.	

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ሳድቦ: he, scolding exceedingly &c. | **ሳድበው**: they scolding &c.*Augmented Present and Perfect (Aorist).***ሳድብዋል**: { he scolds (scolded)
exceedingly, &c. | **ሳድበዋል**: they scold, &c.*Comp. Preterite.***ሳድቦ፡ ነበረ**: { he scolded, was scold-
ing exceedingly, &c. | **ሳድበው፡ ነበሩ**: they scolded, &c.*Comp. of Uncertainty.***ሳድቦ፡ ይሆናል**: he may (perhaps) scold exceedingly, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ሳድብ**: { do thou scold. | **ሳድቡ**: { do you scold exceedingly,
Fem. **ሳድቡ**: { &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

መሳድብ: to scold, the scolding.

7. PARTICIPLES.

1. *Nominascens*.—**ሳደቢ**: “a scolder,” “one who scolds exceedingly.”2. *Adject.*—**ዋሳደቢ**: &c. “one who scolds exceedingly,” &c.

Of course, there is no Passive Participle of this form.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Active and Transitive Voice.—The characteristic is an **ኧ**: prefixed to the radix; which puts the Personal Preformatives, excepting **ኧ**:, into the fourth order.*Form አከበረ*: “he honoured.”

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አከበረ: he honoured, &c. as **ከበረ**: | **አከበሩ**: they honoured, &c.*Present and Future.***ያከብራል**: he honours. | **ያከብራሉ**: they honour, &c.
ታከብራለች: she honours, &c. |

2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.***ያከብር**: ታከብር: &c. &c. | **ያከብሩ**: &c.

SINGULAR. *Compound Preterite.* PLURAL.
ያከብር፡ ነበረ፡ &c. | **ያከብሩ፡ ነበሩ፡** &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.
ያከብር፡ ይሆናል፡ he may (perhaps) honour, &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.
ያከበር፡ may he (let him) honour, &c. as **ይከበር፡** &c.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.
Simple.

አክብር፡ he honouring.
አክብራ፡ she honouring.
አክብረህ፡ } thou honouring.
አክብረሽ፡ }
አክብረው፡ } you honouring.
አክብራችሁ፡ }
አክብረ፡ I honouring.

አክብረው፡ they honouring.
አክብራችሁ፡ you honouring.
አክብረን፡ we honouring.

Augmented Present and Preterite.

አክብርዋል፡ { he honours (ho-
noured) &c. | **አክብረዋል፡** { they honour (ho-
noured) &c.

Compound Preterite.

አክብር፡ ነበረ፡ he honoured, &c. | **አክብረው፡ ነበሩ፡** they honoured, &c.

SINGULAR. 5. IMPERATIVE. PLURAL.
Masc. **አክበር፡** } do thou honour. | **አክበሩ፡** do ye honour.
Fem. **አክበራ፡** }

6. INFINITIVE.
ማክበር፡ to honour, the honouring.

7. PARTICIPLES.
1. *Nominal*, **አክባሪ፡** the honourer, one who honours.
2. *Adject.* { **የሚያከብር፡** he who honours.
ያከበረ፡ he who honoured.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ተሰደበ፡ "he was reviled."

Its nature is pre-eminently *Passive* (objective), and reflective. Its characteristic is the Preformative **ተ**: to the original form in the Preterite, Constructive, and Imperative, which, in the same manner as in the cognate languages, gives way to the other Preformatives in the process of conjugations. The second radical remains unchanged in all the moods, tenses, and persons, except in the Constructive Moods. So does also the first radical in the Infinitive Mood. These two remarks serve to distinguish this and the other Passive Conjugations from the rest.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.
 3d pers. masc. **ተሰደበ**: he was reviled. | **ተሰደቡ**: they were reviled,
 &c. &c., the same as **ከበሩ**: &c.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
3d pers. masc. ይሰደባል :	{ he is (will be) reviled.	3d p. c. ይሰደባሉ :	{ they are (will be) reviled.	
... fem. ትሰደባለች :	{ she is (will be) reviled.			
2d pers. masc. ትሰደባለህ :	{ thou art	ትሰደባለችሁ : { you are (will be)	} reviled.	
... fem. ትሰደብዋለሽ :	{ (will be)			
... hon. 1. ይሰደባሉ :	{ you are			
... 2. ትሰደባላችሁ :	{ (will be)			
1st .. com. እሰደባለሁ :	I am (shall be)	እንሰደባለን :	{ we are (shall be)	} reviled.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d pers. masc. ይሰደብ :	fem. ትሰደብ :	ይሰደቡ :
2d .. ትሰደብ :	fem. ትሰደቢ :	ትሰደቡ :
... hon. 1. ይሰደቡ :	2. ትሰደቡ :	
1st .. com. እሰደብ :		እንሰደብ :

Compound Preterite.

SINGULAR.
 3d pers. masc. **ይሰደብ ነበረ**: he was (would be), had been (would have been), reviled, &c. &c.

PLURAL.
ይሰደቡ ነበሩ: they were (would be), had been (would have been), reviled, &c. &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d pers. masc. ይሰደብ ይሆናል :	{ he may (per-haps) be re-viled, &c. &c.	ይሰደቡ ይሆናሉ :	{ they may (per-haps) be re-viled, &c. &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		Simple.	PLURAL.		} reviled.
3d p. masc.	ተሰድዮ:	he being reviled.	ተሰድበው:	they being	
.. . fem.	ተሰድገ:	she being reviled.			
2d .. masc.	ተሰድበህ:	} thou being re- viled.	ተሰድገኝህ:	you being	
.. . fem.	ተሰድበሽ:				
.. . hon. 1.	ተሰድበው:	} you being reviled.			
.. . . 2.	ተሰድገኝሁ:				
1st.. com.	ተሰድቤ:	I being reviled.	ተሰድቡን:	we being	

Augmented Aorist.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
3d p.m.	ተሰድብዋል:	he } is	ተሰድበዋል:	they
... f.	ተሰድገለች:	she } (was)	} are (were) reviled.	}
2d .. m.	ተሰድበሃል:	thou art		
... f.	ተሰድበሽል:	(wast)		
... hon. 1.	ተሰድብዋል:	you are		
... .. 2.	ተሰድገኝል:	(were)		
1st.. com.	ተሰድብዋለሁ:	{ I am (was)	ተሰድብናል:	we

SINGULAR.		Compound Preterite.	PLURAL.	
3d p. m.	ተሰድዮ:	he was (had been) reviled, &c. &c. &c.	ተሰድበው:	they were (had been) reviled, &c. &c.
	ነበረ:		ነበሩ:	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ተሰድብ:	{ do thou be (sub- mit to being) re- viled.	ተሰድቡ:	{ do you be (submit to being) reviled.
Fem. ተሰድቢ:			

6. INFINITIVE.

መሰድብ: to be reviled, the being reviled.

7. PARTICIPLES.

- (a) *Nominal*, ተሰድቢ: one who is reviled.
 (b) *Relative*, α. *Perf.* የተሰደበ: he who was (has been) reviled.
 β. *Pres.* የሚሰደብ: he who is reviled.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

አናገረ: He made (caused to) speak.

The nature of this verb is doubly transitive, or *causative*. It combines the characteristics of both the second and the third conjugations; the prolongation of the first radical giving intensity to the transitively (by **አ**;) augmented form.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. masc.	አናገረ: } he made	አናገረ:	they made
.. .. fem.	አናገረች: } she made	አናገረችሁ:	you made
2d .. masc.	አናገርህ: } thou madest		
.. .. fem.	አናገርሽ: }		
.. .. hon. 1.	አናገረ: }		
.. .. 2.	አናገረችሁ: }		
1st.. com.	አናገርሁ: I made	አናገርን:	we made

to speak.

to speak.

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	የናገረ: he	makes	የናገሩ: they
.. .. fem.	ተናገረች: she	(will make)	
2d .. masc.	ተናገረህ: }	thou makest	ተናገረሁት: you
.. .. fem.	ተናገርሽ: }	(will make)	
.. .. hon. 1.	የናገሩ: }	you make	
.. .. 2.	ተናገረሁት: }	(will make)	
1st.. com.	አናገረሁ: }	I make	አናናገራን: we
		(shall make)	

to speak.

make (will, shall make)
to speak.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers.	የናገር: fem. ተናገር:	የናገሩ:
2d ..	ተናገር: fem. ተናገሪ:	ተናገሩ:
.. hon. 1.	የናገሩ: 2. ተናገሩ:	አናናገር::
1.	አናገር:	

Compound Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d pers. masc.	he made (would make), had made (would have made) to speak, &c.	የናገሩ: ነበሩ:	they made &c. to speak &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

የፍጥር፡ ይህፍል፡ { he may (per-
haps) make to
speak, &c.

PLURAL.

የፍጥሩ፡ ይህፍሉ፡ { they may (per-
haps) make to
speak, &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*3d p. masc. **አፍጥር፡** he... fem. **አፍጥራ፡** she2d .. masc. **አፍጥረህ፡** } thou... fem. **አፍጥረሽ፡** }... hon. 1. **አፍጥረው፡** } you... .. 2. **አፍጥረኹ፡** }1st.. com. **አፍጥረ፡** I

making to speak.

አፍጥረው፡ they**አፍጥረኹ፡** youmaking
to speak.**አፍጥረን፡** we*Compound Aorist.*

3d pers. masc.

አፍጥርዋል፡ { he makes (made) to
speak, &c.

አፍጥረዋል፡ { they make (made) to
speak, &c.

Compound Preterite.

አፍጥር፡ ነበረ፡ { he made (had
made) to speak, &c.

አፍጥረው፡ { they made (had made)
to speak, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አፍጥር፡** { do thou make toFem. **አፍጥራ፡** { speak.**አፍጥሩ፡** do ye make to speak.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማፍጥር፡ to make or cause to speak; the causing to speak.

7. PARTICIPLES.

(a) *Simple*, **አፍጥሪ፡** one who makes to speak.(b) *Relative*,α. *Perfect*, **የፍጥረ፡** he who made to speak, &c.β. *Present*, **የሚፍጥር፡** he who makes to speak, &c.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

ተፍጥረ፡ "He spoke."

The nature and force of this species is intensity, continuation, sometimes reciprocity, either of the original, or of the Fourth Conjugation. It

combines the properties of the Second (long first radical) and Fourth (Preformative **ṭ**;) Conjugations. The **ṭ** is found in the Preterite, Imperative, and Constructive Moods: the first radical is long throughout: the second is of the first order, in all moods, tenses, and persons, except in the Constructive.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

ṭṭṭṭ: he spoke, &c.

PLURAL.

| **ṭṭṭṭ**: they spoke, &c.*Present and Future.*

ṭṭṭṭ: he speaks (will speak) &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: { they speak (will speak) &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ṭṭṭṭ: fem. **ṭṭṭṭ**: &c.| **ṭṭṭṭ**: &c. &c.*Compound Preterite.*

ṭṭṭṭ: **ṭṭṭṭ**: he spoke &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: they spoke &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

ṭṭṭṭ: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { he may (per- | **ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { they may (per-
happ)speak &c. | haps)speak &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ṭṭṭṭ: he speaking &c.| **ṭṭṭṭ**: they speaking &c.*Compound Aorist.*

ṭṭṭṭ: he speaks or spoke &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: they speak or spoke &c.

Compound Preterite.

ṭṭṭṭ: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { he spoke (had | **ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { they spoke (had
spoken), &c. | spoken), &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.

ṭṭṭṭ: } do thou speak.

Fem.

ṭṭṭṭ: }| **ṭṭṭṭ**: do ye speak.

6. INFINITIVE.

ṭṭṭṭ: to speak, the speaking.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ṭṭṭṭ**: a. speaker, speaking.*Relative (a) Perfect*, **ṭṭṭṭ**: he who spoke.(b) *Present*, **ṭṭṭṭ**: he who speaks.

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

ተምዋከረ: he tried.**ተምዋገተ**: he disputed.

No other instances of this conjugation present themselves to us, except these two. The peculiarity of this conjugation, *i.e.* the change of a radical of the first or of the fourth order into two letters, into the radical of the sixth, with the **ዋ**: of the fourth order, is so frequent in Shoa in other instances, that we apprehend the use of this conjugation itself may be of no small extent. Its force differs not from the sixth conjugation, with which it is identical, except in the change of the first radical.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

ተምዋከረ: he tried, &c.

PLURAL.

| **ተምዋከሩ**: they tried, &c.*Present and Future.***ይምዋከራል**: he tries (will try) &c. | **ይምዋከራሉ**: they try (will try) &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.***ይምዋከር**: &c.| **ይምዋከሩ**: &c.*Compound Preterite.***ይምዋከር**: ነበረ: he tried, &c.| **ይምዋከሩ**: ነበረ: they tried, &c.*Compound of Uncertainty.***ይምዋከር**: { he probably has
ይሆናል: { tried, &c.| **ይምዋከሩ**: { they probably have
ይሆናሉ: { tried, &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

*Simple.***ተምዋክር**: he trying, &c.| **ተምዋክረው**: they trying, &c.*Compound Aorist.***ተምዋክረዋል**: he tries or tried &c.| **ተምዋክረዋል**: { they try or tried,
&c.*Compound Preterite.***ተምዋክር**: { he tried, had tried,
ነበረ: { &c.| **ተምዋክረው**: { they tried, had
ነበሩ: { tried, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ተምዋከር**: } do thou try.
Fem. **ተምዋከሪ**: }| **ተምዋከሩ**: do ye try.

6. INFINITIVE.

መምዋከር: to try, the trying, trial.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ተምዋካሪ**: one who tries.

Relative (a) *Perfect*, **የተምዋካሪ**: he who tried, &c.

(b) *Present*, **የሚምዋክር**: he who tries, &c.

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

አስከበረ: He caused to honour, caused to be honoured.

This is the most frequent form for the causative voice. Its characteristic is the prefixion of the two letters **አስ**: to the original form, with which it has nearly the same mode of conjugation. The second radical is, in the Contingent and all other forms derived from it, put into the sixth order. But it has no Subjunctive form. The Imperative has the Contingent form of the radicals. The Infinitive has the first and second radicals in the first order. The Personal Preformatives are put before the **አስ**: absorbing the **አ**:

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

አስከበረ: he caused to be hon. &c.

3d pers.

PLURAL.

አስከበሩ: { they caused to be
honoured, &c.

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. **ያስከብራል**: he causes &c.

... fem. **ታስከብራለች**: she causes &c.

2d.. masc. **ትስከብራለህ**: } thou causest &c.
... fem. **ትስከብርያለሽ**: }

... hon. 1. **ያስከብራሉ**: } you cause &c.
... .. 2. **ትስከብራላችሁ**: }

1st.. com. **አስከብራለሁ**: I cause &c.

ያስከብራሉ: they

ትስከብራላችሁ: you

እናስከብራለን: we

to be honoured.

cause to be honoured.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ያስከብር**: fem. **ትስከብር**:

2d .. **ትስከብር**: fem. **ትስከብሪ**:

... hon. 1. **ያስከብሩ**: 2d **ትስከብሩ**:

1st.. **አስከብር**:

PLURAL.

ያስከብሩ:

ትስከብሩ:

እናስከብር:

3d pers. masc.

Compound Preterite.

ያስከብሩ: } he caused, &c. to be
ነበሩ: } honoured, &c.

ያስከብሩ: } they caused, &c. to be
ነበሩ: } honoured, &c.

Compound of Probability.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ያስከብር፡ } he (probably) may
ይሆናል፡ } cause to be hon. &c.

ያስከብሩ፡ { they (probably) may
ይሆናሉ፡ { cause to be hon. &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

Simple.

አስከብር፡ { he causing to be ho-
 } . noured, &c.

አስከብሩው፡ { they causing to be
 } honoured, &c.

Compound Aorist.

አስከብርዋል፡ { he causes (caused)
 } to be hon. &c.

አስከብሩዋል፡ { they cause (caused)
 } to be hon. &c.

Compound Preterite.

አስከብረ፡ { he caused (had caused)
ነበር፡ } to be honoured, &c.

አስከብረው፡ { they caused (had
ነበሩ፡ } caused) to be ho-
 } noured, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አስከብር፡** } do thou cause to
 Fem. **አስከብሪ፡** } be honoured.

አስከብሩ፡ do ye cause to be hon.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስከበር፡ to cause to be honoured, the causing to be honoured, the
 procuring honour.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አስከባሪ፡** one who causes to be honoured.

Relative,

(a) *Pret.* **ያስከበረ፡** he who caused &c.

(b) *Pres.* **ያሚያስከብር፡** he who causes to be honoured, &c.

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

አስመሳል፡ He caused to resemble ; he flattered, dissimulated.

The difference of this conjugation from the preceding is so slight, that we do not find it necessary to give its flexion: it consists merely in the second radical being constantly long, except in the Constructive: in all the rest it is similar to the preceding **አስከበረ፡** As to the third radical **ል፡** we refer to the deviations marked under the First Conjugation, No. 1. This conjugation, by the way, is very rare.

J. TENTH CONJUGATION.

አስተነገረ: He made to speak.

The force of this conjugation is Causative, as the two preceding ones. The difference consists in the form being augmented by three letters, **አስተ**: instead of the two **አስ**:

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

አስተነገረ: he made to speak, &c.

PLURAL.

አስተነገሩ: they made to speak, &c.*Present and Future.***ያስተነገራል:** { he makes &c. to speak, &c.**ያስተነገራሉ:** { they make &c. to speak, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ያስተነገር: &c.**ያስተነገሩ:** &c.*Compound Preterite.***ያስተነገረ፡ነበረ:** &c. { he made &c. to speak, &c.**ያስተነገሩ፡ነበሩ:** { they made &c. to speak, &c.*Compound of Probability.***ያስተነገር:** { he may probably make to speak, &c.**ያስተነገሩ:** { they may probably cause to speak, &c.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

አስተነገር: he causing to speak, &c.**አስተነገረው:** they causing to speak, &c.*Compound Aorist.***አስተነገርዋል:** { he causes (caused) to speak, &c.**አስተነገረዋል:** { they cause (caused) to speak, &c.*Compound Preterite.***አስተነገረ፡ነበረ:** { he caused &c. to speak, &c.**አስተነገረው፡ነበሩ:** { they caused &c. to speak, &c.

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያስተነገር: { may he cause to speak, &c. the same as **ያክበር:****ያስተነገሩ:** { may they cause to speak, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አስተነገር:** { do thou makeFem. **አስተነገራ:** { to speak.**አስተነገሩ:** do you make to speak.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስተንገረ: to cause (the causing) to speak.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አስተንጋሪ**: one who causes to speak.

Relative Perfect, **ያስተነገረ**: he who caused to speak.

Present, **የሚያስተነግር**: he who causes to speak.

K. ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

ተዋዋረደ: He was entirely humbled; humbled himself entirely.

The force of this conjugation is intensity added to forms D and F: its characteristic is reduplication of the prolonged first radical with the objective **ተ**: prefixed. As its conjugation is the same as **ተናገረ**: we abstain from detailing it.

L. TWELFTH CONJUGATION.

ሰገበረ: Broke to pieces.

The force of this conjugation is intense action, represented by a reduplication of the second radical.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

ሰገበረ: he broke to pieces, &c.

PLURAL.

ሰገበሩ: they broke to pieces, &c.

Present and Future.

ያሰገብራል: { he breaks, &c. to
pieces, &c.

ያሰገቡሉ: { they break, &c. to
pieces, &c.

3d pers. masc.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

ያሰገብር: &c.

ያሰገቡሩ: &c.

Compound Preterite.

ያሰገብር ነበረ: { he broke, &c.
to pieces, &c.

ያሰገቡር ነበሩ: { they broke, &c.
to pieces, &c.

Compound of Probability.

ያሰገብር ይሆናል: { he may pro-
bably break
to pieces, &c.

ያሰገቡር ይሆናሉ: { they may probably
break to pieces, &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. m.	ደስባብር: may he	ደስባብሩ: may they	
.. .. f.	ትስባብር: may she		
2d p. m.	ትስባብር: } mayest thou	ትስባብሩ: may you	break to pieces.
.. .. f.	ትስባብሪ: }		
.. hon. 1.	ደስባብሩ: may you		
.. hon. 2.	ትስባብሩ: }		
1st ..	እስባብር: may I	እንስባብር: may we	

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ስባብር: he breaking to pieces, &c. | ስባብረው: { they breaking to pieces, &c.

Compound Aorist.

ስባብርዋል: { he breaks (broke) to pieces, &c. | ስባብረዋል: { they break (broke) to pieces, &c.

Compound Preterite.

ስባብር: ነበረ: { he broke, &c. to pieces, &c. | ስባብረው: ነበረ: { they broke &c. to pieces, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ስባብር: } do thou break to

Fem. ስባብሪ: } pieces, &c.

ስባብሩ: do ye break to pieces, &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

መስባብር: to break to pieces.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple. ስባባሪ: one who breaks to pieces.*Rel. Pret.* የሰባበረ: he that broke to pieces.*Pres.* የሚሰባብር: he that breaks to pieces.

M. THIRTEENTH CONJUGATION.

አደራረገ: He performed great works.

The force of this conjugation is an addition of intensity to the Third Conjugation: this is represented by a reduplication and prolongation of the second radical, with the Preformative አ::

I. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

አደራረገ: { he performed great works, &c.

PLURAL.

አደራረጉ: { they performed great works, &c.

SINGULAR.		Present and Future.	FLURAL.
3d pers. masc.			
የደራርጋል	{ he performs, &c. great works, &c.	|	የደራርጋሉ { they perform great works, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.***የደራርግ** : &c.| **የደራርጉ** : &c.*Compound Preterite.***የደራርግ ነበረ** : { he performed &c.
great works, &c.| **የደራርጉ ነበሩ** : { they performed
&c. great works,
&c.*Compound of Probability.***የደራርግ** : { he may probably per-
ይህፍል : { form great works.| **የደራርጉ** : { they may probably
ይህፍሉ : { perform great works,
&c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

የደራርግ : { may he perform great
works, &c.| **የደራርጉ** : { may they perform
great works, &c.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.***አደራርግ** : { he performing great
works.| **አደራርገው** : { they performing
great works, &c.*Compound Aorist.***አደራርጋል** : { he performs (per-
formed) great works
&c.| **አደራርገዋል** : { they perform (per-
formed) great
works, &c.*Compound Preterite.***አደራርግ ነበረ** : { he performed,
&c. great works
&c.| **አደራርገው ነበሩ** : { they performed,
&c. great works,
&c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አደራርግ** : { do thou perform
Fem. **አደራርግ** : { great works.| **አደራርጉ** : { do ye perform great
works.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማደራረግ : to perform (the performance of) great works.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አደራራገ** : one who performs great works.*Rel. Perf.* **የደራረገ** : he who performed great works.*Pres.* **የሚደራርግ** : he who performs great works.

N. FOURTEENTH CONJUGATION.

ተመካከረ: He counselled with others, gave and took advice, advised frequently.

ተመለሰ: He went and returned, went to and fro, *i.e.* walked.

The force of this conjugation is double intensity, reciprocity, and repetition of the action expressed in the verb. This is represented by reduplication and prolongation of the second radical. Its flexion and conjugation is quite the same as in the Sixth Conjugation.

O. FIFTEENTH CONJUGATION.

ተናገረ: He conversed with another, spoke frequently.

The nature of this conjugation is the same as the preceding; and as to form, it differs only in having the first radical long, in conformity with the sixth species, which it resembles entirely in flexion and conjugation.

P. Q. R. S. SIXTEENTH, SEVENTEENTH, EIGHTEENTH, & NINETEENTH CONJUGATIONS.

ደነዘዘ: "To be stiff," "obdurate." *Intransitive.*

አደነዘዘ: "To stiffen." *Transitive.*

ተመለሰ: "He returned," "was returned." *Passive, & Reflective.*

ተሸማመ: "He reviled." *Intensive.*

The chief peculiarity of these four species consists in doubling the third radical, or gemination.—As we shall have an opportunity of treating more fully upon the Geminant Verbs, we merely mention these forms here; and pass on to the remaining forms of the Regular Triliteral Verb.

T. TWENTIETH CONJUGATION.

አደናገረ: He talked one out of any thing, dissuaded.

This and the Twenty-first and Twenty-fourth species are rather remarkable for their singular Preformatives, which are not in use in the cognate dialects. The conjugation of **አደናገረ:** is similar to that of **አደራረገ:** we therefore proceed.

U. TWENTY-FIRST CONJUGATION.

አወሸፍገረ: He folded his hands.

In what the peculiar force of this species consists, we cannot determine.

V. TWENTY-SECOND CONJUGATION.

ፈተተ: He rubbed thin between his fingers.

The reduplication of the second and of the third radical, which consti-

tutes the peculiar character of this species, serves to express, as a sort of diminution, a peculiar modification of the original action.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ἈΤΑΤΑ: { he rubbed thin between
his fingers, &c.

ἈΤΑΤΑ: they rubbed thin, &c.

Present and Future.

ῥἈΤΑΤΑ: he rubs thin, &c.

ῥἈΤΑΤΑ: they rub thin, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ῥἈΤΑΤΑ: &c.

ῥἈΤΑΤΑ: &c.

Compound Preterite.

ῥἈΤΑΤΑ: { he rubbed (&c.) thin,
ἰΝΕ: { &c.

ῥἈΤΑΤΑ: { they rubbed (&c.)
ἰΝΕ: { thin, &c.

Compound of Probability.

ῥἈΤΑΤΑ: { he may probably
ῥΥΓΑ: { rub thin, &c. &c.

ῥἈΤΑΤΑ: { they may probably
ῥΥΓΑ: { rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ῥḂΤΑΤΑ: may he rub thin, &c.

ῥḂΤΑΤΑ: may they rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

ἈΤΑΤΑ: he rubbing thin, &c.

ἈΤΑΤΑ: they rubbing thin &c.

Compound Aorist.

ἈΤΑΤΑΦΑ: { he rubs (rubbed)
thin, &c.

ἈΤΑΤΑΦΑ: { they rub (rubbed)
thin, &c.

Compound Preterite.

ἈΤΑΤΑ: { he rubbed (was rub-
ἰΝΕ: { bing) thin, &c.

ἈΤΑΤΑ: { they rubbed (were
ἰΝΕ: { rubbing) thin, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ḂΤΑΤΑ:** { do thou rub

Fem. **ḂΤΑΤΕ:** { thin, &c.

ḂΤΑΤΑ: do you rub thin, &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

ῐḂΤΑΤΑ: to rub thin, the rubbing thin between the fingers.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple,

ἈΤΑΤΕ: one who rubs thin, &c.

Relative Perf.

ῥἈΤΑΤΑ: he who has rubbed thin, &c.

Pres.

ῥῥἈΤΑΤΑ: he who rubs thin, &c. &c.

W. TWENTY-THIRD CONJUGATION.

ተፈተተ: It was rubbed thin between the fingers.

This is a Passive derivation from the preceding conjugation, to be treated entirely as the Fourth Conjugation.

X. TWENTY-FOURTH CONJUGATION.

አንጸበረቀ: It shone, glittered, sparkled, resplended.

This form seems to be derived from **በረቀ**: "to fulminate," "to lighten"; and the Preformative **አንጸ**—: appears to have either a diminutive or a frequentative effect.

2. *Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of the Triliteral Verbs.*

Having thus exhibited the conjugation of the various forms of the Regular and Perfect Triliteral Verb, we now proceed to the consideration of the Imperfect Forms of Triliteral, of Perfect and Imperfect Forms of Biliteral, and of the various forms of Pluriliteral Verbs. We shall endeavour to point out, especially by paradigms, where it is necessary, and the peculiarities in the flexion and conjugation of each; not in order to accumulate materials for the memory, but to facilitate the comprehension of the structure of this part of the language. We notice,

I. TRILITERAL VERBS *whose First Conjugation is A (አ: or ዐ::)*

The chief peculiarity of these verbs consists in the liability under which they are to have the first radical contracted with every Preformative acceding to the Verb, according to the rule laid down in Part I. Chap. VII. 2. A.B. For the purpose of exemplifying, we select the two Verbs **አመኒ**: "he believed," and **አለፈ**: "he passed."

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Simple Form, **አመኒ**: He believed.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite. Regular, as **ከበረ**:*Present and Future*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. masc.	የምናል : he	} believes, will	የምናሉ : they believe, will
.. .. fem.	ተምናሉት : she		
2d .. masc.	ተምናህ :	} thou believest, wilt	ተምናህሁ : you believe, will
.. .. fem.	ተምናሽ :		
.. .. hon. 1.	የምናሉ :	} you believe, will	
.. 2.	ተምናሁ :		
1st.. com.	አምናሁ : I believe, shall		አናምናለን : we believe, shall

2. CONTINGENT,

As the Indicative Present, without the Auxiliary **አለ**:

SINGULAR.		3. SUBJUNCTIVE.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ደመን : may he	} believe.	ደመኑ : may they believe.
.. .. fem.	ትመን : may she		
2d .. masc.	ትመን : }		ትመኑ : may you believe.
.. .. fem.	ትመን : }		
.. .. hon. 1.	ደመኑ : }		
.. .. 2.	ትመኑ : }		
1st.. com.	አመን : may I		አንመን : may we believe.

3d pers. masc.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አምኖ: he believing, &c.**አምነው**: they believing, &c.Regular; as, **ከብር**: &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አመን**: } do thou believe!Fem. **አመን**: }**አመኑ**: do ye believe!

6. INFINITIVE.

ማመን: to believe, the believing, faith, trust.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አማን**: one who believes, a believer.'*Relative Perfect*, **ምነ**: he who believed. **ምነኑ**: she who believed, &c*Relative Present*, **ምነምን**: he who believes, &c.**ምነትምን**: she who believes, &c.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Objective Voice.***ትመነ**: He was believed, accredited, was trustworthy, faithful, entrusted himself.

Flexion and Conjugation according to the Fourth Conjugation of the Regular Triliteral Verb; with the exception, that the characteristic **ተ**: because it has joined to itself the vowel of the first radical, is not dropped, but retained in all the forms.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

ትመነ: he was trusted, &c.

PLURAL.

ትመኑ: they were trusted, &c.*Present and Future.***ይትመናል**: he is trusted, &c.**ይትመናሉ**: they are trusted, &c.

SINGULAR.	2. CONTINGENT.	PLURAL.
ይተመን : &c.	| ይተመኑ : &c.	
	3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.	
3d pers. masc.	4. CONSTRUCTIVE.	
ተምኖ : he being trusted, &c.	| ተምነው : they being trusted, &c.	
	5. IMPERATIVE.	
Masc. ተመን : } Fem. ተመን: }	| ተመኑ : be ye faithful.	
	6. INFINITIVE.	
	መተመን : to be believed, faithfulness, &c.	
	7. PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Simple</i> , ተማን : one who is believed.		
<i>Rel. Pret.</i> የተመነ : he who was believed, faithful, &c.		
<i>Present</i> , የሚተመን : he who is believed, &c.		

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አሳመነ**: He made believe, persuaded.

This form corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb **አስከበረ**:: The first radical **አ**: is absorbed by the characteristic Pre-formative **አስ**:: No Subjunctive form.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አስተመነ**: He accredited, attested, entrusted.

This form, which joins the characteristics of the Objective and of the Transitive Voice in nature and form, answers the Tenth Conjugation of the Perfect Triliteral Verb.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተላለፈ**: Passed and repassed, trespassed, varied.

In this form, which corresponds with the Fourteenth Conjugation of the Regular Triliteral Verb, the first radical, **አ**., is dropped; but the **ተ**: is retained when Prefixes are joined; e.g. Contingent, **ይተላለፍ**:: Infinitive, **መተላለፍ**::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative and Intensive Voice.***አስተላለፈ:** He made pass in different ways.In this form the Causative **አስ:** is joined to the preceding Conjugation.

II. SECOND CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

Trilateral Geminants.

(See page 56, II.)

These verbs seem to have been derived from Biliterals which are lost, but whose second radical has been doubled. (See Part I. Ch. VII. 2. D.) In conjugating these verbs, the geminant letters are often contracted into one; but that letter, although the Abyssinians have no mark for distinguishing the accent, shows its origin, by having the tone.

It will be observed, that there are, among the ten different Conjugations of this class, four which have the **ኝ:**, either with the Transitive **አ:**, or the Intransitive **ተ:** prefixed.

In looking at the numerous verbs of this class, mentioned in the note, page 56, it will be seen that all classes of letters, except the gutturals and the vowel letters, are subject to gemination.

The general mode of conjugating being the same in this as in all other classes of verbs, attention is to be paid especially to those forms which have gemination, and to those which have the contraction.

After these preliminary remarks, we proceed to give the Paradigms.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ለቀቀ: *neut.* He went away; *act.* He dismissed.

Gemination exists in this Conjugation—in the Indicative, Preterite, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive and Simple, and Relative Preterite Participles: *Contraction* in the remaining Moods and Tenses.

1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ለቀቀ: he dismissed.	ለቀቁ: they dismissed.
.. .. fem.	ለቀቀች: she dismissed.	
2d .. masc.	ለቀቀህ: }	ለቀቀችህ: you dismissed.
.. .. fem.	ለቀቀሽ: }	
.. .. hon. 1.	ለቀቁ: }	
.. .. 2.	ለቀቀችሁ: }	
1st .. com.	ለቀቁሁ: I dismissed.	ለቀቁን: we dismissed.

SINGULAR.

Present and Future.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ይለቃል:	he	} dismisses.	ይለቃሉ:	they dismiss.
.. .. fem.	ትለቃለች:	she			
2d .. masc.	ትለቃለህ:		} thou dismissest.	ትለቃለችህ:	you dismiss.
.. .. fem.	ትለቅደለሽ:				
.. .. hon. 1.	ይለቃሉ:		} you dismiss.		
.. .. hon. 2.	ትለቃለችሁ:				
1st .. com.	ኧለቃለሁ:	I dismiss.		ኧንለቃለን:	we dismiss.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይለቅ:	fem. ትለቅ:	ይለቁ:
2d	ትለቅ:	fem. ትለቂ:	ትለቂ:
.. .. hon. 1.	ይለቁ:	2. ትለቂ:	
1.	ኧለቅ:		ኧንለቅ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ይልቀቅ:	may he	} dismiss.	ይልቀቅ:	may they dismiss.	
.. .. fem.	ትልቀቅ:	may she				
2d .. masc.	ትልቀቅ:	} mayest thou			ትልቀቅ:	may you dismiss.
.. .. fem.	ትልቀቂ:					
.. .. hon.1.	ይልቀቂ:	} may you				
.. .. . 2.	ትልቀቂ:					
1st .. com.	ኧልቀቅ:	may I		ኧንልቀቅ:	may we dismiss.	

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d p. masc.	ልቀ:	he	} dismissing.	ልቀው:	they dismissing.
.. . fem.	ልቃ:	she			
2d .. masc.	ልቃህ:	} thou		ልቃችሁ:	you dismissing.
.. . fem.	ልቃሽ:				
.. . hon. 1.	ልቀው:	} you			
.. . . 2.	ልቃችሁ:				
1st .. com.	ልቁ:	I		ልቁን:	we dismissing.

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc.	ልቋል:	he dismisses, &c.	}	ልቀዋል:	they dismiss.	
.. . . fem.	ልቃለች:	she dismisses.				
2d .. masc.	ልቃህል:	} thou dismissest.			ልቃችኋል:	you dismiss.
.. . . fem.	ልቃሽል:					
.. . . hon. 1.	ልቀዋል:	} you dismiss.				
.. . . . 2.	ልቃችኋል:					
1st .. com.	ልቅያለሁ:	I dismiss.		ልቀናል:	we dismiss.	

Compound Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. | PLURAL.
ἄφ: ἵνα: he dismissed, &c. | **ἄφω: ἵνα**: they dismissed, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

m. **ἄφφ: fem.** **ἄφφ**: do thou dismiss. | **ἄφφ**: do ye dismiss.

6. INFINITIVE.

σῶἄφφ: To dismiss, the dismissal, dismissal.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple.

Simple Act. **ἄφφ**: one who dismisses.

Pass. **ἄφφ**: one who is dismissed.

Rel. Perf. **ῥἄφφ**: he who has dismissed.

Pres. **ῥσῶἄφ**: he who dismisses.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active or Transitive Voice.

ἡλφφ: He thinned, rarefied, refined.

We need scarcely to mention, that this form corresponds with the Third Conjugation of the Perfect Triliterals. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Simple, and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative Present, the Contingent, and Rel. Part. Present; both Gemination and Contraction in the Constructive and Imperative. Having presented a pretty full view of the preceding conjugation, it will suffice in the present one to give merely the leading types; i.e. 3d person masc. sing. and common plural of those paradigms which have all the Persons, besides the more simple Moods.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. | PLURAL.
ἡλφφ: he refined, &c. | **ἡλφφ**: they refined.

Present and Future.

ῥλφφ: he refines. | **ῥλφφ**: they refine.

2. CONTINGENT.

ῥλφ: | **ῥλφ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ῥλφφ: may he refine. | **ῥλφφ**: may they refine.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

ἡλφ: and **ἡλφφ**: he refining. | **ἡλφω**: and } they refining.
ἡλφφω: }

Compound Aorist.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
አርቋል and አርቅቋል	} he refines.	| አርቀዋል and አርቅዋዋል	} they refine.

Compound Preterite.

አርቆ and አርቅቆ	ነበረ ::	| አርቀው and አርቅቀው	ነበሩ ::
he refined.		they refined.	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አረቅ and አርቅቅ	} do thou	| አረቁ and አርቅቁ	do ye refine.
Fem. አረቂ and አርቅቂ	} refine.		

6. INFINITIVE.

ማርቅቅ : to refine, the refining, rarefaction.

7. PARTICIPLES.

<i>Simple,</i>	አርቃቂ : a refiner.
<i>Rel. Perf.</i>	ያረቀቀ : he who refined.
<i>Pres.</i>	ዋሚያረቅ : he who refines.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive or Objective Voice.

ተለቀቀ : He was dismissed.

This conjugation has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood. Besides this, it is regularly conjugated, after the manner of the Fourth Conjugation of the Perfect Triliteral Verbs.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Active and Intensive Voice.

አለቀቀ : He yawned. **አሳደደ** : He persecuted.

Both in nature and form, this conjugation resembles the Fifth of the Perfect Triliteral Verb. It preserves gemination in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Perfect Participle. In the other Moods and Tenses, it is contracted.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
አሳደደ : he persecuted.		| አሳደደ : they persecuted.	

Present and Future.

ያሳደድ : he persecutes.	| ያሳደሉ : they persecute.
------------------------------	-------------------------------

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

2. CONTINGENT.

PLURAL.

ያሳድ:| **ያሳድ:**

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

አሳድ: he persecuting.| **አሳድው:** they persecuting.*Compound Aorist.***አሳድዋል:** he persecutes.| **አሳድዋል:** they persecute.*Compound Preterite.***አሳድ ነበረ:** he persecuted.| **አሳድው ነበሩ:** they persecuted.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አሳድድ:** } do thou perse-
Fem. **አሳድፎ:** } cute.| **አሳድዱ:** do ye persecute.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማሳደድ: to persecute, the persecuting, persecution.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አሳደኛ:** a persecutor.*Rel. Perf.* **ያሳደደ:** he who persecuted.*Present,* **የሚያሳድ:** he who persecutes.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intensive Voice.***ተሳደደ:** He was persecuted, habitually persecuted.

This form is conjugated after the Sixth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb; has no peculiar Subjunctive; and geminates and contracts after the third form of this class.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስመረረ:** He embittered.

Corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Triliteral Verb, and is conjugated like the first form of this class.

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አንሸተ:** He cheated.

A peculiar form, of which, as we have not hitherto had a similar one, we give here an outline.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite Regular.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.
አንሳተተ: he cheated.

PLURAL.
አንሳተቱ: they cheated.

Present and Future.

ያንሻታል: he cheats.

ያንሻታሉ: they cheat.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

ያንሻት:

ያንሻቱ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

3d pers. masc.

አንሻቱ: he cheating.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

አንሻተው: they cheating.

Compound Aorist.

አንሻተዋል: he cheats.

አንሻተዋሉ: they cheat.

Compound Perfect.

አንሻተ: ነበረ: he cheated.

አንሻተው: ነበሩ: they cheated.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አንሻትት: } do thou cheat.
Fem. አንሻትኝ: }

አንሻቱቱ: do ye cheat.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማንሻትት: to cheat, the cheating.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, አንሻታኝ: a cheater.

Rel. Perf. ያንሻተተ: he who cheated.

Present, የሚያንሻት: he who cheats.

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

Passive Voice.

ተንሻተተ: He was cheated.

This is the Passive form of the preceding derivation; and, in gemination, is regulated by the Third Conjugation of this class.

I. K. NINTH AND TENTH CONJUGATIONS.

Reflective Voice.

አንጠረረ: and ተንጠረረ: He stretched himself.

The peculiarity of these two forms, the power of which seems to be the same, consists in the length of both the geminating letters. On account of their length, they cannot be contracted. They assume, therefore, no Subjunctive form; and the Geminants retain their length, except in the

Constructive, which retains the last radical short, and enters a **ት**: which servile, also, is as a paragoge added in the Infinitive; thus:

SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
አንጠራርቱ :	{ he stretching him- self, &c.	አንጠራርቱ :
		{ they stretching themselves, &c.

INFINITIVE.

ማንጠራራት: the stretching, to stretch, oneself.

III. THIRD CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

Geminants whose first radical is **አ**::

This class numbers only a few Verbs. They combine the imperfections of contraction in the beginning and at the end, *i.e.* the imperfections of both the preceding classes. For an exhibition, we select the Verbs **አዘዘ**: "he commanded," and **አመመ**: "it was painful."

This class has but four Conjugations; the first of which is Intransitive or Active; the second, Objective, Intransitive, or Reflective; the third, Causative; and the fourth, Intensive.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

አዘዘ: He commanded.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

አዘዘ: he commanded.

PLURAL.

| **አዘዙ**: they commanded.

Present and Future.

ያዘል: he commands.

| **ያዘሉ**: they command.

3d pers. masc.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

ያዝ:

| **ያዝ**:

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ይዘዝ: may he command.

| **ይዘዙ**: may they command.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **አዝ**: he commanding.

| **አዘው**: they commanding.

.. .. fem. **አዝ**: she commanding.

2d .. masc. **አዝህ**: thou commanding.

.. .. fem. **አዝሽ**:

| **አዝኹህ**: you commanding.

.. .. hon. 1. **አዘው**: } you commanding.

.. .. hon. 2. **አዝኹህ**: }

1st.. com. **አዝኛ**: I commanding.

| **አዝን**: we commanding.

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc. አዛዋል :	he }	commands.	አዛዋል :	they command.
... fem. አዛለች :	she }			
2d .. masc. አዛሃል :	} thou commandest.		አዛችኋል :	you command.
... fem. አዛሻል :				
... hon. 1. አዛዋል :	} you command.			
... hon. 2. አዛችኋል :				
1st.. com. አዛለሁ :	I command.		አዛናል :	we command.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አዝዝ :	} do thou command.	አዝዝ :	do ye command.
Fem. አዝዟ :			

6. INFINITIVE.

ማዝዝ: to command, the commanding, command.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አዛዟ**: one who commands, a commander.

Rel. Pret. **ያዝዘ**: he who commanded.

Present, **የሚያዝ**: he who commands.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive.

ተመመ: He felt pain, was sick. **ተዘዘ**: He was commanded, he obeyed.

In this conjugation, the **ተ**: is retained throughout; and contraction of the second and third radical takes place in the Constructive Mood only. No Subjunctive. Second radical is treated as in all the Objective forms.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

አሳመመ: He made sick, gave or caused pain.

The first radical **አ**:, absorbed in the Preformative **ሳ**:, undergoes no further change. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Indicative, Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative, Present, and Constructive; and both Gemination and Contraction in the Contingent. Respecting the latter, we think, that when it stands by itself, it is geminated; but when it receives any addition at the beginning or at the end, it is contracted.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Intensive Voice.

አስተመመ: He nursed sick persons.

This conjugation corresponds with the Tenth of the Perfect Trilaterals, and with the Fourth of the First Class of Imperfect Trilaterals. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood.

3. *Conjugation of Biliteral Verbs.*

Biliteral Verbs are, in the Amharic Language, exceedingly numerous; owing especially, as will be seen hereafter, to the many contractions from Trilateral Verbs, by which they became Biliterals. In treating on these Verbs, it will be best to divide them into four distinct classes; namely, (a) Perfect; (b) Imperfect; (c) Contracted; (d) Irregular and Anomalous Biliteral Verbs.

I. FIRST CLASS.—*Perfect Biliterals.*

These are Verbs which have the two radical letters in the first form, do not begin with any vowel letter, and are conjugated regularly. They have this resemblance to some of the Contracted forms, that the paragogic **ተ**: is added to most of its Infinitives, and enters into the Constructives. They are conjugated through Eight different Species or Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Intransitive, Active, and Transitive Voice.

ገዘ: He flourished. **ደገ**: Was great. **ሰጠ**: He gave.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ሰጠ : he gave.	ሰጡ : they gave.
... fem.	ሰጠች : she gave.	
2d .. masc.	ሰጠህ : } thou gavest.	ሰጣችሁ : you gave.
... fem.	ሰጠሽ : }	
... hon. 1.	ሰጡ : }	
... .. 2.	ሰጣችሁ : } you gave.	
1st .. com.	ሰጠሁ : I gave.	ሰጠን : we gave.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

- 3d p. masc. ይሰጣል: he gives.
 fem. ትሰጣለች: she gives.
 2d .. masc. ትሰጣለህ: } thou
 fem. ትሰጣለሽ: } givest.
 hon. 1. ይሰጣሉ: } you
 2. ትሰጣላችሁ: } give.
 1st .. com. እሰጣለሁ: I give.

PLURAL.

- ይሰጣሉ: they give.
 ትሰጣላችሁ: you give.
 እንሰጣለን: we give.

2. CONTINGENT.

- 3d p. masc. ይሰጥ: fem. ትሰጥ: ይሰጡ:
 2d .. masc. ትሰጥ: fem. ትሰጭ: ትሰጡ:
 hon. 1. ይሰጡ: 2. ትሰጡ:
 1st እሰጥ:: እንሰጥ::

3. SUBJUNCTIVE

- 3d p. masc. ይሰጥ: may he give. ይሰጡ: may they give.
 fem. ትሰጥ: may she give.
 2d .. masc. ትሰጥ: } mayest thou ትሰጡ: may you give.
 fem. ትሰጭ: } give.
 hon. 1. ይሰጡ: } may you
 2. ትሰጡ: } give.
 1st .. com. እሰጥ: may I give. እንሰጥ: may we give.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE with ት:

- 3d p. masc. ሰጥተ: he giving. ሰጥተው: they giving.
 fem. ሰጥታ: she giving.
 2d .. masc. ሰጥተህ: } thou
 fem. ሰጥተሽ: } giving. ሰጥታችሁ: you giving.
 hon. 1. ሰጥተው: } you
 2. ሰጥታችሁ: } giving.
 1st .. com. ሰጥቼ: I giving. ሰጥተን: we giving.

Compound Aorist.

- 3d p. masc. ሰጥተዋል: he gives. ሰጥተዋል: they give.
 fem. ሰጥታለች: she gives.
 2d .. masc. ሰጥተሃል: } thou
 fem. ሰጥተሻል: } givest. ሰጥታችኋል: you give.
 hon. 1. ሰጥተዋል: } you
 2. ሰጥታችኋል: } give.
 1st .. com. ሰጥቻለሁ: I give. ሰጥተናል: we give.

Simple Form without ጥ: (rare).

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ደገ: he being great.	ደገው: they being great.
... fem.	ደጋ: she being great.	
2d .. masc.	ደገህ: } thou being	ደጋችሁ: you being great.
... fem.	ደገሽ: } great.	
... hon. 1.	ደገው: } you being	
... .. 2.	ደጋችሁ: } great.	
1st.. com.	ደጌ: I being great.	ደገን: we being great.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	ሰጥ: ሰጥ: }	do thou give.	ሰጡ: ሰጡ: do ye give.
Fem.	ሰጭ: ሰጭ: }		

6. INFINITIVE.

መስጠት: to give, the giving. መጠጥ: to drink, the drinking.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ሰጭ: and ሰጪ: a giver.

Rel. Pret. የሰጠ: he who gave.

Pres. የሚሰጥ: he who gives.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive Voice.

አገነ: He beautified, praised. አደገ: He grew.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	አደገ: he grew.	አደጉ: they grew.
... fem.	አደገች: she grew.	
2d .. masc.	አደገህ: } thou	አደጋችሁ: you grew.
... fem.	አደገሽ: } grewest.	
... hon. 1.	አደጉ: } you	
... .. 2.	አደጋችሁ: } grew.	
1st.. com.	አደገሁ: I grew.	አደገን: we grew.

3d pers. masc.

Present and Future.

የደጋል: he grows, &c. | የደጋሉ: they grow.

2. CONTINGENT.

የደግ: &c. | የደጉ: &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE, with ት::

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አበጀት: he preparing.

| አበጀተው: they preparing.

Without ት::

አድጎ: he growing.

| አድገው: they growing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አድግ: } do thou grow.

Fem. አድገ: }

| አድጉ: do ye grow.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማድግ: to grow, the growth.

ማብጀት: to prepare, the preparing, preparation.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, አደገ: one who grows. አጣፍ: one who irrigates.

Rel. Pret. የደገ: he who grew.

Pres. የሚደግ: he who grows.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Objective Voice.

ተሰጠ: He was given.

This has nothing peculiar. It is treated like other objective forms, and has the paragogic ት: uniformly.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Transitive or Causative Voice.

አስገዛ: He beautified, glorified.

Has the paragogic ት::

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አስገዛ: he beautified.

| አስገዙ: they beautified.

Present and Future.

ያስገዳ: he beautifies.

| ያስገዳሉ: they beautify.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያስገን:

| ያስገኑ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያስገን: may he beautify.

| ያስገኑ: may they beautify.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አስገንቶ: he beautifying.

| አስገንተው: they beautify.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አስገን: } do thou beautify.

Fem. አስገኝ: }

| አስገኑ: do ye beautify.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስገነት: to beautify, beautifying.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አስገኝ**: beautifier.*Rel. Pret.* **ያስገነ**: he who beautified.*Present*, **የሚያስገነ**: he who beautifies.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive or Causative Voice.***አሳደገ**: He caused to grow, trained, reared, educated.

Differs only in form from the preceding conjugations. It has no paragogic **ት**:, and is conjugated like **አሳመነ**: in the Third Conjugation of the first class of Imperfect Triliteral Verbs.

F. G. H. The Sixth, Seventh, and Eighth Conjugations are treated like Triliteral Geminants.

II. SECOND CLASS.

Imperfect Biliterals, which have አ: for the first Radical Letter.

The first radical **አ**: undergoes the usual changes, as shown in the preceding conjugations. The paragogic **ት**: prevails through all the conjugations of this class, which contains but few verbs. The verb **አዋ**: "He saw," containing all the different forms of Conjugations of this class, we have selected for exhibition.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Subjective, Intransitive, and Transitive Voice.***አዋ**: He saw.

1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.***አዋ**: he saw, &c., like **ሰጠ**:*Present and Future.*

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **የዋል**: he sees.
 fem. **ተዋለች**: she sees.
 ... masc. **ተዋለህ**: } thou seest.
 ... fem. **ተዋለሽ**: }
 ... hon. 1. **የዋል**: }
 ... hon. 2. **ተዋለችሁ**: } you see.
 1st.. com. **አዋለሁ**: I see.

PLURAL.

የዋሉ: they see.
ተዋለችሁ: you see.
አዋለን: we see.

2. CONTINGENT.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	የዩ:	fem.	ተዩ:	የዩ::
2d .. masc.	ተዩ:	fem.	ተዩ:	ተዩ:
.. .. hon. 1.	የዩ:	2.	ተዩ:	
1st.. com.	አዩ:			አዩ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ዩዩ:	may he see.	ዩዩ:	may they see.
.. .. fem.	ተዩ:	may she see.		
2d p. masc.	ተዩ:	} mayest thou see.	ተዩ:	may you see.
.. .. fem.	ተዩ:			
.. .. hon. 1.	ዩዩ:	} may you see.		
.. 2.	ተዩ:			
1st.. com.	አዩ:	may I see.	አዩ:	may we see.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d p. masc.	አዩተ:	he seeing.	አዩተው:	they seeing.
.. .. fem.	አዩተ:	she seeing.		
2d p. masc.	አዩተህ:	} thou seeing.	አዩተህ:	you seeing.
.. .. fem.	አዩተሽ:			
.. .. hon. 1.	አዩተው:	} you seeing.		
.. 2.	አዩተህ:			
1st.. com.	አዩተ:	I seeing.	አዩተን:	we seeing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	አዩ:	} do thou see.	አዩ:	do ye see.
Fem.	አዩ:			

6. INFINITIVE.

መዩት: the seeing, sight, aspect.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.

Relative Preterite, የዩ: he who saw.

Present, የዩዩ: he who sees.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive, Reflective, or Intransitive Voice.

ተዩ: He was seen, appeared.

1. INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.		Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ታዋ : he was seen.		ታዩ : they were seen.
... fem.	ታዋኝ : she was seen.		
2d p. masc.	ታዋህ :		ታዋኝሁ :
... fem.	ታዋሽ :		
... hon. 1.	ታዩ :		
... .. 2.	ታዋኝሁ :		
1st.. com.	ታዋሁ :		ታዩኑ :

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	ይታዩል : he is seen.	ይታዩሉ : they are seen.
... fem.	ትታዩለች : { she is seen, &c.	

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይታይ : fem. ትታይ :	ይታዩ :
-------------	--------------------------------	--------------

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ታይቲ : he appearing, &c. | ታይተው : they appearing.
-------------	--

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ታይ :	} do thou appear. | ታዩ : do ye appear.
Fem. ታይ :	

6. INFINITIVE.

መታዋት: to be seen, the appearing, appearance.

7. PARTICIPLES.

<i>Simple, None.</i>	<i>Relative Preterite</i> , የታዋ : he who appeared.
	<i>Present</i> , የመታይ : he who appears.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

አሳዋ: He made to be seen, caused to appear, showed.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	አሳዋ : he showed.		አሳዩ : they showed.
... fem.	አሳዋኝ : she showed.		
2d p. masc.	አሳዋህ : f. አሳዋሽ :		አሳዋኝሁ :
... hon. 1.	አሳዩ : 2. አሳዋኝሁ :		
... com.	አሳዋሁ :		አሳዩኑ :

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ያሳያል : he shows.	ያሳያሉ : they show.
... fem.	ታሳያለች : she shows.	
2d p. masc.	ታሳያለህ :	ታሳያላችሁ :
... fem.	ታሳያለሽ :	
... hon. 1.	ያሳያሉ :	
... .. 2.	ታሳያላችሁ :	
1st. com.	አሳያለሁ :	እኛሳያለን :
3d pers. masc.		
ያሳይ : fem. ታሳይ : &c.	2. CONTINGENT.	
	| ያሳይ : &c.	

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ያሳይ : may he show.	ያሳይ : &c.
... fem.	ታሳይ : &c. may she show	

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	አሳይተ : he showing.	አሳይተው :
... fem.	አሳይተ :: she showing.	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አሳይ :	} do thou show.	| አሳይ : do ye show.
Fem. አሳይ :		

6. INFINITIVE.

ማሳየት: To show, the showing.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.

Rel. Pret. **ያሳየ**: he who showed.

Pres. **የሚያሳይ**: he who shows.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

አስተየ: He made to be seen, brought into sight.

1. INDICATIVE PRETERITE.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	አስተየ : brought into sight.	አስተዩ : &c.
	አስተዩች : &c., like the preceding.	

Present and Future.

ያስተያል: he brings into sight. | **ያስተያሉ**: they bring into sight.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያስተይ: fem. **ታስተይ**: &c. | **ያስተይ**: &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc.

አስተይት: he bringing into sight.**አስተይተው**: { they bringing into sight.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አስተይ**: } do thou bring
Fem. **አስተይ**: } into sight.**አስተይ**: do ye bring into sight.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስተየት: to bring into sight.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.*Rel. Pret.* **ያስተየ**: he who brought into sight.*Pres.* **የሚያስተይ**: he who brings into sight.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocative Voice.***ተየየ**: He was with another in reciprocal sight; Looked at each other.

As this is not used in our languages in the Singular, we shall omit the translation, and give merely the requisite forms in Amharic.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ተየየ:fem. **ተየየች**:**ተየየ**:*Present and Future.***ይተየየል**:fem. **ትተየየለች**:**ይተየየሉ**:

2. CONTINGENT.

ይተየየ:fem. **ትተየየ**:**ይተየየ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ተየየት:fem. **ተየየት**:**ተየየተው**:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ተየየ**:fem. **ተየየ**:**ተየየ**:

6. INFINITIVE.

መተየየት: the being in sight of each other; relation to each other.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple.—None.*Rel. Pret.* **የተየየ**::*Pres.* **የሚተየየ**::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

Causative and Reciprocal.

አስተያየ: He made look at each other; placed over against each other.

Is not, in form, different from the preceding; save the prefixing of **አስ**: and the changes which that undergoes; and, that in the Imperative it has **አስተያይ**:

III. THIRD CLASS.—*Contracted Biliterals.*

This very numerous class is derived from Triliterals; which, in the Ethiopic and Tigrê Languages, have either a Vowel letter **አ**: **ዐ**: **የ**: or **ዐ**:, or a Guttural **ሀ**: **ሐ**: **ኀ**: or **ኸ**: contracted with the preceding letter. The letter to which their vowel has thus been joined has been made long; whilst the verb itself has become a biliteral one. In some few cases of Quadriliterals, two contractions have been made; and we have therefore Biliteral Verbs of two long radicals. Verbs contracted from Triliterals differ, as to whether the lost letter stood formerly in the middle or at the end; and this materially determines their form of conjugation.

(aa.) Verbs with an absorbed Guttural at the end.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Intransitive and Active Voice.

ገገ: *intrs.* He entered (went in). Eth. **ገበአ**:

The second radical is always long; except in the Constructive Mood, and in the Simple Participle.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ገገ : he went in.	ገቡ : they went in.
... fem.	ገገች : she went in.	
2d .. masc.	ገገህ : } thou wentst in.	ገገችህ : you went in.
... fem.	ገገሽ : }	
... hon. 1.	ገቡ : } you went	
... .. 2.	ገገችሁ : } in.	
1st. . . .	ገገሁ : I went in.	ገገነ : we went in.

3d pers. masc'

Present and Future.

ጀገል: he goes in, &c. | **ጀገሉ**: they go in, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

ጀገ: fem. **ትገገ**: | **ጀገቡ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ይግገ : may he go in.	ይግቡ : may they go in.
... fem.	ትግገ : may she go in.	
2d p. masc.	ትግገ : } mayest thou	ትግቡ : may you go in.
... fem.	ትግቢ : } go in.	
... hon. 1.	ይግቡ : } may you go	
... 2.	ትግቡ : } in.	
1st.. com.	እግገ : may I go in.	እግግገ : may we go in.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m.	ገብተ : he entering.	ገብተው : they entering.
... f.	ገብታ : she entering.	
2d.. m.	ገብተህ : fem. ገብተሽ :	ገብታችሁ :
.. hon. 1.	ገብተው : 2. ገብታችሁ :	
1st com.	ገብቺ :	ገብተን :

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ግገ :	} do thou enter.	ግቡ : do ye enter.
Fem. ግቢ :		

6. INFINITIVE.

መግገት : to go in, the going in, the entrance.

7. PARTICIPLES.

- Simple*, **ገቢ** : *intrans.* one who enters in.
ግቢ : that which is entered into, *i.e.* the interior.
Rel. Pret. **ዋገገ** : he who entered.
Pres. **ዋሚገገ** : he who enters.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Transitive Voice.

እገገ : He made go in, introduced.—(Is quite regular.)

1. INDICATIVE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.	<i>Preterite.</i>	PLURAL.
እገገ : he introduced.	|	እገቡ : they introduced.

Present and Future.

ያገገል : he introduces. | **ያገገሉ** :

2. CONTINGENT.

ያገገ : fem. **ታገገ** : | **ያገቡ** :

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ያገገ: may he introduce. | **ያገቡ**: may they introduce.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አገብተ: he introducing. | **አገቡተው**: they introducing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	አገገ :	} do thou introduce.	|	አገቡ :	do ye introduce.
Fem.	አገቢ :				

6. INFINITIVE.

ማገገት: the introducing, introduction.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አገቢ**: one who introduces.*Rel. Perf.* **ያገገ**: he who introduced.*Pres.* **የሚያገገ**: he who introduces.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive.***ተገገ**: *impersonal*. It was proper, It belonged.

Is treated like other Passives—has no Subjunctive.

The Constructive has **ተገብተ**: and in other respects it is like **ገገ**:

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***አገገ**: He married.The **ገ**: is long throughout; and the Preformative **አ**: is treated as in all the Transitive forms.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive of the preceding.***ተገገ**: Was married.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስገገ**: He caused to go in; introduced.*Subjunctive*, **ያስገገ**:: | *Imperative*, **አስገገ**::*Constructive*, **አስገብተ**:: | *Infinitive*, **ማስገገት**::

All the other Forms quite regular.

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

Intensive Voice.

በቃቃ: (from **በቃ**: it sufficed) was quite sufficient.

A geminating form. The long middle letter is retained throughout, and the rest treated like **ገገ**::

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

Intensive and Reiterative.

አገገገ: He frequently went in, often cohabited, behaved properly.

This conjugation is like a transitive of the preceding one: the long penultima is retained throughout, and the rest treated like **አገገ**::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

አጸፋፋ: He comforted, strengthened.

The two middle letters remain long; **አ**: is treated as in all Transitive forms: there is no Subjunctive; and as to the rest, this conjugation is like the others of this class.

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

Intense Passive.

ተጸፋፋ: Was comforted.

Is treated like other Passives, retains the long penultima, and has the other peculiarities of this class.

(bb.) Forms with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle.

In these forms, the original guttural having been in the middle, on its absorption, the first radical has become long. It retains, however, its length only in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, and the Infinitive Moods of the Active; and through the whole of the Passive forms, except the Constructive. It has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive; but uses, as is generally done in such cases, the Contingent for the purpose. It has, besides, the paragogic **ጥ**: extremely seldom; because it appears that letter is intended for compensation for final absorbed letters, of which there are none in this class.

This class has seven different Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ማለ: (Eth. መሐለ:) He swore, took an oath.

1. INDICATIVE PRETERITE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. m. ማለ: he swore.

... f. ማለች: she swore.

2d .. m. ማለህ: fem. ማለሽ:

.. hon. 1. ማለ: 2. ማለችሁ:

1st com. ማለሁ:

PLURAL.

ማለ: they swore.

ማለችሁ:

ማለን:

Present and Future.

3d p. m. ይሞላል: he swears.

| ይሞላሉ: they swear.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m. ይሞል: fem. ትሞል: | ይሞሉ::

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m. ሞሎ: he swearing.

ሞለው:

... f. ሞላ: she swearing.

2d .. m. ሞላህ: fem. ሞላሽ:

ሞላችሁ:

.. hon. 1. ሞለው: 2. ሞላችሁ:

1st com. ሞደ:

ሞለን:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ማለ: } do thou swear.

Fem. ማደ: }

| ማሉ: do ye swear.

6. INFINITIVE.

መማል: to swear, the swearing. -

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ማደ: one who swears.

Rel. Pret. ሞላ: he who swore.

Pres. ሞላሞል: he who swears.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Transitive Voice.

አማለ: He made swear.

Contingent, የሞል::

Imperative, አሞል:

Constructive, አሞሉ::

Infinitive, ማማል::

(See the above remarks.)

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተማለ**: He was sworn.

Contingent, ያማል፡፡	|	Imperative, ተማል፡
Constructive, ተምሎ፡፡	|	Infinitive, መማል፡፡

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive (Causative) Voice.***አስማለ**: He made swear.

Contingent, ያስምል፡፡	|	Imperative, አስማል፡፡
Constructive, አስምሎ፡፡	|	Infinitive, ማስማል፡፡

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Frequentative (Intensive) Voice.***አጣጣለ**: Distributed by casting (lots). Radix, **ጣለ**: He cast.

Contingent, ያጣጥል፡፡	|	Imperative, አጣጣል፡፡
Constructive, አጣጥሎ፡፡	|	Infinitive, ማጣጣል፡፡

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocatative Voice.***ተማማለ**: Mutually swore, conspired.

Contingent, ያማማል፡፡	|	Imperative, ተማማል፡፡
Constructive, ተማምሎ፡፡	|	Infinitive, መማማል፡፡

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተማለለ፡፡** He adjured, earnestly entreated.

Contingent, ያማለል፡፡	|	Imperative, ተማለል፡፡
Constructive, ተማሎ፡፡	|	Infinitive, መማለል፡፡

(cc.) *Forms with an Absorbed P: in the Middle.*

These forms are determined by the rule laid down, Part I. Ch. VII. 4. E. On the absorption of the **P**: its corresponding vowel *é* has been joined to the first radical; which, whenever it is shortened, changes *é* into a short *i*; but when lengthened (as in the Fourth Conjugation), the first radical is put into the Fourth Order, and **P**: is restored. No paragogic **ጥ**: is in this class.

We take the two Verbs, **ገለጠ**: He sold, and **ሔደ**: He went.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ሸጠ: *Active*, He sold. *Ethiopic*, **ሠጀጠ**:

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ሸጠ : he sold.	ሸጡ : they sold.
... fem.	ሸጠች : she sold.	
2d .. masc.	ሸጥህ : fem. ሸጥሽ :	
... hon. 1.	ሸጡ : 2. ሰጣችሁ :	ሸጣችሁ :
1st.. com.	ሸጥሁ :	
		ሸጥኑ :

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	ሠጀጠል : he sells.	|	ሠጀጠሉ : they sell.
-------------	-------------------------	--	--------------------------

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ሠጀጥ : fem. ተሸጥ :	ሠጀጡ : ተሸጡ :
2d	ተሸጥ : fem. ተሸጭ :	
... hon. 1.	ሠጀጡ : 2. ተሸጡ :	
1st.. com.	እሸጥ :	እንሸጥ :

3d pers. masc.

ሠጀጥ: may he sell.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

| **ሠጀጡ**: may they sell.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ሸጦ : he selling.	ሸጠው : ሸጣችሁ : ሸጠን :
... fem.	ሸጣ : she selling.	
2d .. masc.	ሸጠህ : fem. ሸጠሽ :	
... hon. 1.	ሸጠው :	
... .. 2.	ሸጣችሁ :	
1st.. com.	ሸጡ :	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ሸጥ :	} do thou sell.	| ሸጡ : do ye sell.
Fem. ሸጭ :		

6. INFINITIVE.

መሸጥ: to sell, the selling, sale.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple (a.) Act. **ሸጧል**: one who sells, a seller.(b.) **ሸጧል**: a thing sold, merchandize.*Rel. Preterite*, **ሸጠ**: he who sold.*Present*, **ሠጀጠ**: he who sells.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***አሐደ:** He made go, drove the threshing ox.

Contingent, ያሐድ:	Imperative, አሐድ:
Subjunctive, ያሐድ:	Infinitive, ማሐድ::
Constructive, አሐደ::	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተሸጠ:** He was sold.

Contingent, ይሸጥ:	Imperative, ተሸጥ:
No Subjunctive.	Infinitive, መሸጥ::
Constructive, ተሸጦ:	

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተሻየጠ:** He traded, dealt, carried on commerce.

Contingent, ይሻየጥ:	Imperative, ተሻየጥ:
Constructive, ተሻየጦ:	Infinitive, መሻየጥ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative (Transitive) Voice.***አስሐደ:** He made to go.

Contingent, ያስሐድ::	Imperative, አስሐድ::
Subjunctive, ያስሐድ::	Infinitive, ማስሐድ::
Constructive, አስሐደ::	

(dd.) *Forms with an Absorbed ፬: in the Middle.*

According to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 5, and 6, the middle letter ፬: has been absorbed; its vowel *o* attached to the first radical. This is further shortened, in the Subjunctive Constructive and Active Imperative, into *û*. But in those forms which have long letters, ፬: is restored. In some of these, it forms diphthongs of the fourth order. Those forms of this class, whose first radical is a diphthong, as **ቀ-የ: ቀ-ላ: ቀ-ጣ: ኩ-ረ: ጉ-ደ:**, have the Causative form with **አስ:** and the paragogic **ት::**; which the forms with simple *o* have not.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***ቆመ** : He stood.

1. INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	<i>Preterite.</i>	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ቆመ : he stood.		ቆሙ : they stood.
.. .. fem. ቆመች : she stood.		
2d .. masc. ቆምህ : fem. ቆምሽ :	ቆማችሁ :	
.. .. hon. l. ቆሙ : 2. ቆማችሁ :		
1st.. com. ቆምሁ ::		ቆማሁ ::

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. ይቆም : fem. ትቆም :	ይቆሙ :
2d .. masc. ትቆም : fem. ትቆሙ :	ትቆሙ :
.. .. hon. l. ይቆሙ : 2. ትቆሙ :	
1st.. com. እቆም ::	እንቆም ::

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ይቆም : may he stand.	ይቆሙ :: may they stand.
.. .. fem. ትቆም : may she stand.	

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ቁሞ : he standing.	ቁመው : they standing.
.. .. fem. ቁማ : she standing.	
2d .. masc. ቁመህ : fem. ቁመሽ :	ቁማችሁ :
.. .. hon. l. ቁመው : 2. ቁማችሁ :	
1st.. com. ቁሜ :	ቁመን ::

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ቁም : }	stand !	ቁሙ : do ye stand.
Fem. ቁሚ :		

6. INFINITIVE.

መቆም : to stand, the standing, station, state.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ቀዋሚ** : one who stands (see Dictionary). **ቁም** : Eth. standing, straightforward.

Rel. Pret. **ፆቆመ** : he who stood.*Pres.* **ፆሚ ቁም** : he who stands.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አቆመ**: He made to stand, erected.

Contingent, ያቆም :	Imperative, አቆም :
Subjunctive, ያቆም :	Infinitive, መቆም ::
Constructive, አቆሞ :	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተቆመ**: He was erected.—No Subjunctive.

Contingent, ይቆም : (ይቆወም):	Imperative, ተቆም : (ተቆወም):
Constructive, ተቆሞ ::	Infinitive, መቆም :: (መቆወም):

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተቋወመ**: He withstood, resisted.

Contingent, ይቋወም :	Imperative, ተቋወም :
Constructive, ተቋወሞ :	Infinitive, መቋወም ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስቀ-የ**: He caused to wait.

Contingent, ያስቀ-ይ :	Imperative, አስቀ-ይ :
Subjunctive, ያስቀ-ይ :	Infinitive, መስቀ-የት ::
Constructive, አስቀ-ይት :	

F. G. SIXTH AND SEVENTH CONJUGATIONS.

*Intensive Forms.***ተቋቋ-መ**: and **ተቋቋ-መ**:: To resist to the end.

Contingent, ይቋቋ-ም : and ይቋቋም :	Imperative, ተቋቋ-ም : & ተቋቋም :
Constructive, ተቋቋሞ :	Infinitive, መቋቋ-ም : and መቋቋም :

IV. FOURTH CLASS.—*Doubly Imperfect Biliterals.*

These are subdivided into three species:

- (aa) Verbs doubly contracted.
- (bb) Verbs beginning with **አ**: and terminating in an absorbed guttural.
- (cc) Beginning with **የ**: which absorbs a guttural.

(aa) *Doubly Contracted Biliterals.*

These are but few in number; derived from Quadrilaterals, and flexible through three Conjugations.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Intransitive. (Active) Voice.

ለለ: He was loose, lax.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ለለ : he was lax.	ለለ : they were lax.
.... fem. ለለች : she was lax.	
.... masc. ለለህ : fem. ለለሽ :	ለለችሁ :
.... hon. 1. ለለ : 2. ለለችሁ :	
1st.. com. ለለሁ :	ለለኑ :

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. የለለ : he is lax.	የለለ : they are lax.
... fem. ትለለች : she is lax.	
2d.. masc. ትለለህ :	ትለለችሁ :
... fem. ትለለሽ :	
... hon. 1. የለለ :	
... .. 2. ትለለችሁ :	
1st.. com. እለለሁ :	እንለለን :

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. የለለ : fem. ትለለ :	የለለ :
2d.. .. ትለለ : .. ትለለ :	
... hon. 1. የለለ : 2. ትለለ :	ትለለ :
1st.. com. እለለ :	እንለለ :

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ላልተ: he being lax.	ላልተው:
... fem.	ላልታ: she being lax.	
2d .. masc.	ላልተህ:	ላልታችሁ:
... fem.	ላልተሽ:	
... hon. 1.	ላልተው:	
... .. 2.	ላልታችሁ:	
1st.. com.	ላልቺ:	ላልተን:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ላላ: fem. ላይ: be lax. | ላሉ: do ye be lax.

6. INFINITIVE.

መላላት: to be loose, lax.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.
Rel. Pret. የላላ: he who was lax.
Pres. የሚላላ: he who is lax.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive Voice.

አላላ: To loosen, relax.

<i>Contingent,</i>	የላላ:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	አላላ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	አላልተ:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መላላት::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive Reflective Voice.

ተራራ: Was pitied.

<i>Contingent,</i>	የራራ:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተራራ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተራርተ:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መራራት:

(bb) *Bilaterals beginning with አ: and terminating in an Absorbed Guttural.*

They are but few, and have only Three Conjugations. They have the Paragogic ት:

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***አጣ:** He wanted, had not.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. m.	አጣ: he wanted.	አጡ: they wanted.
... f.	አጣኝ: she wanted.	
2d .. m.	አጣህ: fem. አጣሽ:	አጣኝሁ:
.. hon. l.	አጡ: 2. አጣኝሁ:	
1st com.	አጣሁ:	አጣኑ::

3d pers. masc.

*Present, and Future.***ያጣል:** he wants. fem. **ታጣለኝ:** | **ያጣሉ:** they want.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያጣ: fem. **ታጣ:** | **ያጡ:**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ይጣ: fem. **ትጣ:** | **ይጡ::**

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አጥቶ: he wanting. fem. **አጥታ:** | **አጥተው:** they wanting.

5. IMPERATIVE.

አጣ: fem. **አጭ:** do thou want. | **አጡ:** do ye want.

6. INFINITIVE.

መጣት: To want, the wanting, want.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.*Rel. Pret.* **ያጣ:** he who wanted.*Pres.* **የመጣው:** he who wants.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Intransitive Voice.***ታጣ:** To be wanted.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይታጣ::	|	<i>Imperative,</i> ታጣ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ታጥቶ::	|	<i>Infinitive,</i> መታጣት::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive, Causative Voice.***አሳጣ**: To deprive.*Contingent, የሳጣ*:*Imperative, አስጣ*:*Subjunctive, የስጣ*:*Infinitive, ማሳጣት*:*Constructive, አሳጥጥ*:(cc) *Verb beginning with P: which absorbs a Guttural.*

Only one Verb has been discovered to belong to this class.

ያዘ: Eth. **አዛዘ**: To seize.The **ያ** is shortened into **ይ**: and even reduced to the mere vowel *ī*.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ያዘ**: He seized.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. m. **ያዘ**: he seized.... f. **ያዘች**: she seized.2d .. m. **ያዘህ**: fem. **ያዘሽ**:.. hon. 1. **ያዘ**: 2. **ያዘሁ**:1st com. **ያዘሁ**:

PLURAL.

ያዘ: they seized.**ያዘሁ**:**ያዘሁ**:*Present and Future.*3d p. m. { **ይዛል**: & **ይደዛል**: } he seizes.**ይዛሉ**: and **ይደዛሉ**: they seize.... f. { **ጥዛለች**: & **ጥደዛለች**: } she seizes.2d .. m. **ጥዛለህ**: & **ጥደዛለህ**:**ጥዛለሁ**: and **ጥደዛለሁ**:... f. **ጥዛለሽ**: & **ጥደዛለሽ**:.. hon. 1. **ይዛሉ**: and **ይደዛሉ**:... 2. { **ጥዛለሁ**: & **ጥደዛለሁ**:1st com. **እዛለሁ**: & **እደዛለሁ**:**እኔዛለን**: and **እንደዛለን**:

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m. **ይዝ**:**ይዝ**:... f. **ጥዝ**: and **ጥደዝ**:**ጥዝ**: and **ጥደዝ**:2d .. m. **ጥዝ**: and **ጥደዝ**:... f. **ጥዝ**: and **ጥደዝ**:.. hon. 1. **ይዝ**: 2. **ጥዝ**: & **ጥደዝ**:1st com. **እዝ**: and **እደዝ**:**እኔዝ**: and **እንደዝ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

3d p. m. **ያዝ**: may he seize.
 . . . f. **ትያዝ**: may she seize.
 2d . . m. **ትያዝ**: fem. **ትያዝ**:
 .. hon. 1. **ያዙ**: 2. **ትያዙ**:
 1st com. **እያዝ**:

PLURAL.

ያዙ: may they seize.
ትያዙ:
እያዙ:

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m. **ይዛ**: he seizing.
 . . . f. **ይዛ**: she seizing.
 2d . . m. **ይዛህ**: fem. **ይዛሽ**:
 .. hon. 1. **ይዛው**: 2. **ይዛችሁ**:
 1st com. **ይዙ**:

ይዛው: they seizing.
ይዛችሁ:
ይዙን:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ያዝ**: } do thou seize.
 Fem. **ያዝ**: }

ያዙ: do ye seize.

6. INFINITIVE.

መያዝ: to seize, the seizing, seizure.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ያዝ**: a seizer.

Rel. Pret. **የያዘ**: he who seized.

Present.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **የሚያዝ**: and **የሚያዝ**: he who seizes.
 . . . fem. **የምትያዝ**: and **የምትያዝ**: she who seizes.
 2d . . masc. **የምትያዝ**: and **የምትያዝ**:
 . . . fem. **የምትያዝ**: and **የምትያዝ**: } thou who seizes.
 . . . hon. 1. **የሚያዙ**: and **የሚያዙ**:
 2. **የምትያዙ**: and **የምትያዙ**: } you who seize.
 . . . com. **የምያዝ**: I who seize.

PLURAL.

የሚያዙ: and **የሚያዙ**: they who seize.
የምትያዙ: and **የምትያዙ**: you who seize.
የምንያዝ: and **የምንያዝ**: we who seize.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive and Causative Voice.***አያዝ**: He caused to seize.

Contingent, ያዝ :	Imperative, አያዝ :
Subjunctive, ያያዝ :	Infinitive, ማያዝ ::
Constructive, አያዝ :	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተያዝ**: He was seized.

Contingent, ያያዝ :	Imperative, ተያዝ :
Constructive, ተያዝ :	Infinitive, መያዝ ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስያዝ**: He caused to be seized, betrayed.

Contingent, ያሰዝ : and ያስያዝ :	Imperative, አስያዝ :
Subjunctive, ያስያዝ :	Infinitive, ማስያዝ ::
Constructive, አሰዝ : and አስያዝ :	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Active and Passive, Frequentative and Reciprocal.***ተያያዝ**: He frequently, alternately, reciprocally, completely, seized, or was seized.

Contingent, ያያያዝ :	Imperative, ተያያዝ :
Constructive, ተያያዝ :	Infinitive, መያያዝ ::

4. Various Conjugations of Quadriliteral and Pluriliteral Verbs.

I. FIRST CLASS.—Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals.

This numerous class has Eleven Conjugations. (See pp. 56—60.)

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Active Voice.***ለመለመ**: It was green. **ቀጠቀጠ**: He beat.

Contingent, ይለመለመ :	Imperative, ለግለግ :
Subjunctive, ይለግለግ :	Infinitive, መለግለግ ::
Constructive, ለግለግ :	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active, Transitive Voice.***አለምለም:** He made green, verdant, refreshed.

Contingent, ያለመልም:	Imperative, አለምልም:
Subjunctive, ያለምልም:	Infinitive, ማለምለም::
Constructive, አለምልሞ:	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተለቀለቀ:** He was bedaubed.

Contingent, ይለቀለቅ:	Imperative, ተለቀለቅ:
Constructive, ተለቅልቆ:	Infinitive, መለቀለቅ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Active Voice.***አነቃነቀ:** He shook.

Contingent, ያነቃንቅ:	Imperative, አንቃንቅ:
Subjunctive, ያንቃንቅ:	Infinitive, ማንቃነቅ::
Constructive, አንቃንቆ:	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ተለቃለቀ:** He bedaubed, washed himself.

Contingent, ይለቃለቅ:	Imperative, ተለቃለቅ:
Constructive, ተልቃልቆ:	Infinitive, መለቃለቅ::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***አስለቀለቀ:** He caused bedaubing. (**አሸከረከረ:** He moved, crept.)

Contingent, ያስለቀልቅ:	Imperative, አስለቅልቅ:
Subjunctive, ያስልቅልቅ:	Infinitive, ማስለቅለቅ::
Constructive, አስለቅልቆ:	

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***አንበደበደ:** He beat, shook.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያንበድብድ:	<i>Imperative,</i> አንበድብድ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ያንበድብድ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ማንበድበድ::
<i>Constructive,</i> አንበድብድ:	

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive Voice.***ተንቀጠቀጠ:** He trembled.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይንቀጠቀጥ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተንቀጠቀጥ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተንቀጥቅሮ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መንቀጠቀጥ::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Active Voice.***አንቀሳቀሰ:** He stirred up, moved.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያንቀሳቅስ:	<i>Imperative,</i> አንቅሳቅስ:
<i>Constructive,</i> አንቀሳቅሶ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ማንቀሳቀስ::

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ተንቀሳቀሰ:** He was stirred, He moved.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይንቀሳቀስ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተንቀሳቀስ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተንቀሳቅሶ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መንቀሳቀስ::

L. ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***አሳንቀሳቀሰ:** He stirred, moved.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያሳንቀሳቅስ:	<i>Imperative,</i> አሰንቅሳቅስ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ያሰንቀሳቅስ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ማሳንቀሳቀስ::
<i>Constructive,</i> አሳንቀሳቅሶ:	

II. SECOND CLASS.—*Derivates from Triliterals, having one Radical Reduplicated and Transposed.*

This class is not numerous, and it has Six Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Intransitive Voice.

ደሉደሞ: He was blunt.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ደሉደሞ: he was blunt.	ደሉደሙ: they were blunt.
... fem. ደሉደሙት:	
2d .. masc. ደሉደሞህ:	ደሉደማችሁ:
... fem. ደሉደሞሽ:	
... hon. 1. ደሉደሙ:	
... hon. 2. ደሉደማችሁ:	
1st.. com. ደሉደሞሁ:	ደሉደሞኑ:

Present and Future.

ደደሉደማል: he is blunt.

ደደሉደማሉ: they are blunt.

2. CONTINGENT.

ደደሉደሞ: fem. **ትደሉደሞ:** | **ደደሉደሙ:**

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ደሉደሞት: he being blunt. | **ደሉደሞተው:**

5. NO IMPERATIVE.

6. INFINITIVE.

መደሉደሙት: to be blunt, the being blunt, bluntness.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Rel. Pret. **ዋደሉደሞ:** he who was blunt.

Pres. **ዋደደሉደሞ:** he who is blunt.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive, and Intransitive Voice.

አደሉደሞ: He blunted. **አጉረመረመ:** He murmured.

Contingent, **ያጉረመርም:**

Imperative, **አጉረምረም:**

Subjunctive, **ያጉረምረም:**

Infinitive, **መጉረምረም:**

Constructive, **አጉረምረሞ:**

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተደሉደሞ:** Was blunted.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ደደሉደሞ:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተደሉደሞ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተደሉደሞቶ:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መደሉደመት::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አከፈወ:** He gave success.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያከፈወን:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	አከፈወን:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ያከፈወን:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማከፈወን::
<i>Constructive,</i>	አከፈወቶ:	|		

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***ተከፈወ:** He had success, succeeded, prospered.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያከፈወን:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተከፈወን:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተከፈወቶ:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መከፈወን::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***ተንገረገበ:** It became knotty.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያንገረገበ:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተንገረገበ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተንገረገቦ:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መንገረገበ::

III. THIRD CLASS.

Geminants, probably derived from Triliterals, but having their original verb lost, so as not to be reckoned to the geminating Conjugation of the Triliteral Regular Verb. This class is but small—is inflected through six conjugations, similar to other Geminants.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive.***ኩበለለ**: He escaped.

Contingent, ደኩበለ :	Imperative, ኩበለለ :
Subjunctive, ደኩበለለ :	Infinitive, መኩበለለ ::
Constructive, ኩበሉ :	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተደመሰሰ**: He was destroyed.

Contingent, ደደመሰሰ :	Imperative, ተደመሰሰ :
Constructive, ተደምሰሶ :	Infinitive, መደመሰሰ ::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***ተጉማለለ**: Walked nimbly, affectedly, proudly.

Contingent, ደጉማለለ :	Imperative, ተጉማለለ :
Constructive, ተጉማሉ :	Infinitive, መጉማለለ ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አስጠነቀቀ**: He cautioned.

Contingent, ደስጠነቅቅ :	Imperative, አስጠነቀቅ :
Subjunctive, ደስጠነቅቅ :	Infinitive, ማስጠነቅቅ ::
Constructive, አስጠነቅቅ :	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***አንከገለለ**: He rolled about.

Contingent, ደንከገለ :	Imperative, አንከገለለ :
Constructive, አንከገሉ :	Infinitive, ማንከገለለ :

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተንከገለለ**: He was rolled about.

Contingent, ደንከገለለ :	Imperative, ተንከገለለ :
Constructive, ተንከገሉ :	Infinitive, መንከገለለ ::

IV. FOURTH CLASS.

Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***መሰገነ:** Was glorious.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደመሰገን:	<i>Imperative,</i> መሰገን:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ደመስገን:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መመስገን::
<i>Constructive,</i> መሰገኖ:	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***አመሰገነ:** He glorified.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደመሰገን:	<i>Imperative,</i> አመሰገን:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ደመስገን:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ማመስገን::
<i>Constructive,</i> አመሰገኖ:	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተመሰገነ:** He was glorified.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደመሰገን:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተመሰገን:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተመስገኖ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መመሰገን::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አሰፍብኩ:** He dismissed.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደሰፍብኩ:	<i>Imperative,</i> አሰፍብኩ:
<i>Constructive,</i> አሰፍብኩ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ማሰፍብኩ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Passive Voice.***ተሰፍብኩ:** He was dismissed.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደሰፍብኩ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተሰፍብኩ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተሰፍብኩ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መሰፍብኩ:

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስመሰገነ:** He causes to be glorious or glorified.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያስመሰገን:	<i>Imperative,</i> አስመሰገን:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ያስመሰገን:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ማስመሰገን:
<i>Constructive,</i> አስመሰገኖ:	

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ገልገበ:** He overthrew completely.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይገልገብ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ገልገብ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ይገልገብ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መገልገብ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ገልገብ:	

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely Passive Voice.***ተገልገበ:** He was completely overthrown.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይገልገብ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተገልገብ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተገልገብ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መገልገብ::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocal and Reiterative Voice.***ተሰደደዩ:** Took leave from each other.

<i>Contingent,</i> ይሰደደዩ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተሰደደዩ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተሰደደዩ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መሰደደዩ:

5. *Defective and Anomalous Verbs..*

Three of them—viz. I. The Auxiliary **አለ:** “He is”; II. **ነበረ:** “He was”; III. **ነው:** “He is,”—have been conjugated before we entered upon the Regular Triliteral Verb. (See pp. 64, 65.) We proceed to give here the rest.

IV. *Various Conjugations of the Verb አለ:* “He said.”

The irregularities in this verb are caused by the mixing together of the two forms **አለ:** and **ባለ:** Eth. **ባላ:** “To say.” This verb has Ten Conjugations.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	አለ: he said.	አሉ: they said.
... fem.	አለች: she said.	
2d .. masc.	አለህ: fem. አለሽ:	አላችሁ:
... hon. 1.	አሉ: 2. አላችሁ:	
1st.. com.	አለሁ:	አልን::

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	ይላል: he says.	ይላሉ: they say.
... fem.	ትላለች: she says.	
2d .. masc.	ትላለህ: f. ትያለሽ:	ትላላችሁ:
... hon. 1.	ይላሉ: 2. ትላላችሁ:	
1st.. com.	አላለሁ:	አንላለን::

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ያል: and ይበል:	ይሉ: and ይበሉ:
... fem.	ትል: and ትበል:	
2d .. masc.	ትል: and ትበል:	ትሉ: and ትበሉ:
... fem.	ትይ: and ትበይ:	
... hon. 1.	ይሉ: and ይበሉ:	
... .. 2.	ትሉ: and ትበሉ:	
1st.. com.	አል: and አበል:	አንል: and አንበል:

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ብሉ: he saying.	ብለው:
... fem.	ብላ: she saying.	
2d .. masc.	ብለህ: fem. ብለሽ:	ብላችሁ:
... hon. 1.	ብለው: 2. ብላችሁ:	
1st.. com.	ብዩ:	ብለን:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	በል: }	do thou say.	በሉ: do ye say.
Fem.	በይ: }		

6. INFINITIVE.

ማለት: To say, the saying, meaning, intention.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ገደ: one who says.*Rel. Pret.* ያለ: he who said.*Pres.* የሚል: he who says.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

አበለ: To deceive by talking.*Contingent*, ያበል: | *Imperative*, አበል:*Constructive*, አበሎ: | *Infinitive*, ማበል::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ተባለ: *pass.* To be said, called, named.

1. PRETERITE.

SINGULAR.

3d p. m. ተባለ: he was called.

... f. ተባለች: she was called.

2d .. m. ተባለህ: f. ተባለሽ:

.. hon. 1. ተባሉ: 2. ተባላችሁ:

1st com. ተባለሁ:

PLURAL.

ተባሉ: they were called.**ተባላችሁ**:**ተባለኑ**::*Present and Future.*

3d p. m. ይባላል: he is called.

... f. ትባላለች: she is called.

ይባላሉ: they are called.*Contingent*, ይባል: | *Imperative*, none.*Constructive*, ተብሎ: | *Infinitive*, ማባል::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ታበለ: *pass.* from አበለ: To be deceived.*Contingent*, ይታበል: | *Imperative*, ታበል:*Constructive*, ታብሎ: | *Infinitive*, ማታበል::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

ተባለ: To rumour in public.

Whether any more than the Preterite Indicative is extant of this form, we do not know.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

አገበል: He persuaded.

<i>Contingent</i> , ያገበል :	<i>Imperative</i> , አገብል :
<i>Constructive</i> , አገበሉ :	<i>Infinitive</i> , ማገበል ::

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

ተገበል: To be persuaded, to say to each other.

<i>Contingent</i> , ደገበል :	<i>Imperative</i> , ተገበል :
<i>Constructive</i> , ተገበሉ :	<i>Infinitive</i> , መገበል ::

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

ተገገል: *recipr.* To say to each other.

<i>Contingent</i> , ደገገል :	<i>Imperative</i> , ተገገል :
<i>Constructive</i> , ተገገሉ :	<i>Infinitive</i> , መገገል :

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

ተለል: He was talked into any thing, was persuaded, duped.

<i>Contingent</i> , ደተለል :	<i>Imperative</i> , ተለል :
<i>Constructive</i> , ተሉ :	<i>Infinitive</i> , መተለል ::

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

አተለል: He persuaded, cheated.

<i>Contingent</i> , ያተለል :	<i>Imperative</i> , አተለል :
<i>Constructive</i> , አተሉ :	<i>Infinitive</i> , ማተለል ::

V. First Conjugation of the Verb **አከል**: "To be equal," "amount to."

The remainder of this verb, **ተካከል**: and **አስተካከል**: is regular. The anomaly of the First Conjugation consists in its assuming more of the form **አከል**: or **አሀል**: than of **አከል**., and in its not having all the Moods and Tenses. We give here all that is, as far as we know, extant.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite, none.*Present and Future*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. ያሀል : he is equal,	ያሀሉ :
The other Persons are wanting.	

2. CONTINGENT.

3d Person Masculine, **የህል**: Feminine, **ተህል**:

These two personal forms only are used with the signification, "Amounting to," "equal to;" *e.g.* **የሚሰጠውን: የህል**: "equal to what he gives."

SUBJUNCTIVE, CONSTRUCTIVE, and IMPERATIVE—none.

INFINITIVE, **ማከል**: *i.g.* **መካከል**: and **መካከል**: "the middle."

PARTICIPLES—Eth. **እኩል**: "equal," "half."

Rel. Pres. **የሚህል**: "what is equal to," "amounts to, about, almost"; *e.g.* **ሶስት: ሺህ: የሚህል**: "amounting to (about) three thousand."

VI. *Negative Verb* **ለለ**: "Is not."

All that exists of this verb is this: **ለለ**: "it (he) is not." fem. **ለለች**:: Participle, **የለለ**: fem. **የለለች**: "that which is not," "has not," "is without;" "without," "besides," "exclusively," "not including."

VII. Of the verb **ለቀ**: (Eth. **ልሀቀ**:) "To be greater," "larger," "excel;" in the First Conjugation, nothing is extant but the 3d pers. masc. Conting. **ይለቀ**: which is used as a sort of Comparative, "more," "greater," "especially"; and Participle, **የሚለቀ**: **የምትለቀ**: "he, she, or it, who (which) is greater," "superior," "excels."

The Transitive form of this verb **አለቀ**: "he raised," "made excellent," is quite regular.

VIII. Verb **መጣ**: "He came," is, in its First Conjugation, destitute of an Imperative; whilst all the rest is regular and perfect. The Imperative is supplied by the form **ፍ**: Eth. and Tigr. **ንግ**:: Sing. masc. **ፍ**: fem. **ኒ**: and **ንጂ**: "do thou come." Pl. **ኑ**: "do ye come." Only in very rare instances they use a regular form **ምጣ**: **ምጹ**: **ምጡ**::; but it is against the custom.

IX. **ተወ**: "He left," "omitted," "abandoned," "left off."

1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ተወ :	fem. ተወች :	ተወ :
2d .. masc.	ተወህ :	fem. ተወሽ :	
... .. hon. 1.	ተወ :	2. ተዋችሁ :	ተዋችሁ :
1st.. com.	ተወሁ :		ተወኑ :

SINGULAR. <i>Present and Future.</i>		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ይተዋል : he abandons.	ይተዋሉ : they abandon.
.. .. fem.	ትተዋለች :	
2d .. masc.	ትተዋለህ :	
.. .. fem.	ትተዋለሽ :	

(The rest is regular.)

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይተወ :	fem. ትተወ :	ይተወ :
.. .. masc.	ትተወ :	fem. ትተደ :	

(The rest is regular.)

3. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ተቶ :	fem. ተታ :	ትተወ :
2d .. masc.	ተተህ :	fem. ተተሽ :	ትታችሁ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ትተወ :	2. ትታችሁ :	
1st .. com.	ተቼ :	ተተን :	

4. IMPERATIVE.

masc. ተወ :	fem. ተደ :	ተወ ::
-------------------	------------------	--------------

6. INFINITIVE. **መተወት**::7. PARTICIPLES. **የተወ**:: **የሚተወ**::

The Transitive Conjugation of this verb, **አስተወ**: "he caused to abandon," is analogous to the preceding; the **ወ**: being changed in the 2d Fem. Sing. of the Ind. Pres., Conting., and Imper. into **የ**: and rejected in the Constr.

X. *Verb ባ*: and *አባ*: "to desire," "want," "seek."

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite. Regular.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ይባል : he wants.	ይባሉ : they want.
.. .. fem.	ትባለች : she wants.	
2d .. masc.	ትባለህ : f. ትባለሽ :	ትባላችሁ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ይባሉ : 2. ትባላችሁ :	
1st .. com.	አባለሁ :	አንባለን ::

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይባ :	fem. ትባ :	ይቡ :
2d .. masc.	ትባ :	fem. ትቢ :	ትቡ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ይቡ : 2. ትቡ :		
1st .. com.	አባ :	አንባ ::	

SINGULAR.		3. CONSTRUCTIVE.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ሸተ :	he wanting.	ሸተው : they wanting.
.. .. fem.	ሸተ :	she wanting.	
2d .. masc.	ሸተህ :	fem. ሸተሽ :	ሸተኙ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ሸተው :	2. ሸተኙህ :	
1st.. com.	ሸቺ :		ሸተን ::

4. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አሻ :	} do thou seek.	አሹ :	do ye seek.
Fem. አሽ :			

5. INFINITIVE.

መሻት: to want, &c. the want, desire, request.

6. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, none.

Perfect, **የሻ**: he who wanted.

Present, **የሚሻ**: he who wants.

The Transitive form of this verb, **አሻ**: is only used impersonally, in the 3d person singular masc. and fem., with the signification, "to be requisite," or, in the mind of an Abyssinian, "to produce a feeling of want by absence"; e.g. **አያሻኝም**: "I do not want (it)." The forms used are these:

<i>Preterite</i> , አሻ :	<i>Contingent</i> , ያሻ :
<i>Present</i> , የሻል :	<i>Infinitive</i> , መሻት ::

XI. Of the verb **የለም**: which is negative to the verb **አለ**: "He is," nothing is extant but the 3d person singular masc. **የለም**: "he (it) is not," fem. **የለችም**: "she (it) is not," and plural **የለሁም**: "they are not." With Suffixes, it signifies "has (have) not," e.g. **የለውም**: "he has not." **የለችም**: "she has not." **የለንም**: "we have not," &c.

XII. The negative **አይደለም**: "Is not," is the negative answering the substantive verb **አለ**: "He is." Whence it is derived, we know not. It is used only in the Preterite of the Indicative and Participle, which we give here.

SINGULAR.		INDICATIVE.	PLURAL.
		<i>Preterite.</i>	
3d p. masc.	አይደለም :	he is not.	አይደሉም : they are not.
.. .. fem.	አይደለችም :		
2d .. masc.	አይደለህም :		አይደሉችሁም :
.. .. fem.	አይደለሽም :		
.. .. hon. 1.	አይደሉም :		
.. .. 2.	አይደሉችሁም :		
1st.. com.	አይደለሁም :		አይደሉንም ::

Relative Participle Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. የደረሰ : he who is not.	የደረሱ : they who are not.
... fem. የደረሰች :	
2d .. masc. የደረሰህ :	የደረሱህ :
... fem. የደረሰሽ :	
... hon. 1. የደረሰ :	
... .. 2. የደረሱህ :	
1st.. com. የደረሰሁ :	የደረሱ :

አደረሰም: also is used for the Adverb of Negation, "No."

SECTION V.

On the Connexion of Pronouns with Verbs.

1. In other languages, this subject would be referred to the Syntax; but in the Semitic family, the Pronouns governed by Verbs are so closely joined to them, that it would be improper to do so, as the form of the verb is modified in no slight degree by this combination. We conceive it to be here the best place for exhibiting the mode in which it is performed, after having explained all the other processes to which the Amharic Verbs are subjected.

2. Before we entered on the consideration of the Verb, in the preceding Chapter, Sect. VIII. we mentioned those Pronouns which are joined to Verbs. We now give a brief statement of the regulations under which they are joined.

(a) All the forms of Verbs assume the Verbal Suffixes, except the two nominal forms, the Infinitive and the Simple Participle, which assume Nominal Suffixes; e.g. **እርሱን: መጠበቁ**: "my keeping him." **ጋሻ**: **ጦርን: ተሽካሚው**: "his armour-bearer."

(b) All the forms which assume the Verbal Suffixes do receive them at the end, except the two forms which are inflected with the Auxiliary **አለ**: i.e. the Present and Future Indicative, and the Aorist of the Constructive Mood; which place the Pronoun between the radical letters and the Auxiliary, so as to render it rather an Infix than a Suffix.

(c) With regard to the different degrees of power the Suffixes possess, of changing the letter to which they are joined, they are divided into light (*levia*) and heavy (*gravia*) Suffixes. The light Suffixes are those which are not preceded by a long *ā*: those which are preceded by a long *ā* are heavy Suffixes.

(d) The *light Suffixes* attach themselves to *ultima radicales* of the first order, without change; and to ult. rad. of the sixth order, by converting the latter into the first order, sometimes without change. The heavy suffixes convert ult. rad., in either of those two orders, into the fourth order.

(e) Ultima radicalis of the second and of the seventh order, in accordance with Part I. Ch. VII. 5 & 6.

α. changes **፱**: into **፲**::

β. is changed, if it is a guttural or palatine, into a diphthong of the fourth order: if not, the vowel is detached from the consonant; the latter being put into the sixth, and the former becoming **፱**: of the fourth order, before all the heavy suffixes. Before suffix 2d pers. hon. 1., it is either left unchanged, or changed into the sixth order, leaving the suffix as it is.

(f) Ult. rad. of the third and of the fifth order changes none of the light suffixes; but agreeably to Part I. Ch. VII. 4. D., when being attached to the heavy suffixes, it is generally changed into the sixth order; and **፱**: is added, to assume the long ā of the suffix.

(g) Ult. rad. of the fourth order neither suffers nor produces any change.

(h) With regard to the *insertion* or *infexion* of Pronouns, only this needs to be observed; that **አ**: of the Auxiliary **አለ**: being absorbed by the Pronoun, the latter, or, if it consists of more than one letter, its last letter, is put into the fourth order, **ሁ**: being changed into **ኧ**: or **ኸ**::

These rules are illustrated by the following Table:

TABLE OF A VERB WITH SUFFIXES.

መገባ: He has fed.

1. SIMPLE FORMS.

A. *Preterite*.

Masculine.	THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
መገባኝ: he has fed me.	መገባችኝ: she has fed me.	
መገባህ: he has fed thee (<i>m.</i>).	መገባችህ: she has fed thee (<i>m.</i>).	
መገባሽ: he has fed thee (<i>f.</i>).	መገባችሽ: she has fed thee (<i>f.</i>).	
መገባዎ: he has fed you (hon. 1).	መገባችዎ: she has fed you (h. 1).	
መገባችሁ: he has fed you (hon. 2).	መገባችሁ: she has fed you (h. 2).	
መገባው: he has fed him.	መገባችው: she has fed him.	
መገባት: he has fed her.	መገባችት: she has fed her.	
መገብን: he has fed us.	መገባችን: she has fed us.	
መገባችሁ: he has fed you.	መገባችሁ: she has fed you.	
መገባቸው: he has fed them.	መገባችቸው: she has fed them.	

Masculine.	SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
መገብህኝ: thou hast fed me.	መገብህኝ: thou (f.) hast fed me.	
መገብህው: thou hast fed him.	መገብህው: thou (f.) hast fed him.	
መገብህት: thou hast fed her.	መገብህኝ: thou (f.) hast fed her.	
መገብህ: ^{PL.} thou hast fed us.	መገብህ: ^{PL.} thou hast fed us.	
መገብህቸው: thou hast fed them.	መገብህቸው: thou hast fed them.	

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR, HONORIFIC, like the Third and Second Plural.

FIRST PERSON COMMON.

መገብሁህ: I have fed thee (m.)
መገብሁሽ: I have fed thee (f.)
መገብሁዎ: I have fed you (hon. 1).
መገብሁኝሁ: I have fed you (hon. 2).
መገብሁት: I have fed him.
መገብሁት: I have fed her.
መገብሁ: ^{PL.} I have fed you.
መገብሁቸው: I have fed them.

THIRD PERSON.

መገቡኝ: they have fed me.
መገቡህ: they have fed thee (m.)
መገቡሽ: they have fed thee (f.)
መገቡዎ: they have fed you (h.1).
መገቡኝሁ: they have fed you (h.2).
መገቡት: they have fed him.
መገቡዎት: they have fed her.
መገቡ: ^{PL.} they have fed us.
መገቡኝሁ: they have fed you.
መገቡቸው: they have fed them.

PLURAL.

SECOND PERSON.

መገባኝሁኝ: you have fed me.
መገባኝሁት: you have fed him.
መገባኝሁት: you have fed her.
መገባኝሁ: ^{PL.} you have fed us.
መገባኝሁቸው: you have fed them.

FIRST PERSON.

መገብነህ: we have fed thee (m.)
መገብነሽ: we have fed thee (f.)
መገብነዎ: we have fed you (h.1).
መገብነኝሁ: we have fed you (h.2).
መገብነው: we have fed him.
መገብነት: we have fed her.
መገብነ: ^{PL.} we have fed you.
መገብነቸው: we have fed them.

B. *Contingent.*

Masculine.	THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
ይመገብኝ: let him feed me.		ትመገብኝ: let her feed me, &c. &c. quite like ይመገብኝ: &c.
ይመገብህ: let him feed thee (<i>m.</i>)		SECOND PERSON MASCULINE.
ይመገብሽ: let him feed thee (<i>f.</i>)		ትመገብኝ: like the 3d pers. fem.
ይመገብዎ: let him feed you. (<i>h.1.</i>)		SECOND PERSON FEMININE.
ይመገባችሁ: let him feed you. (<i>h.2.</i>)		ትመገቢኝ: mayest thou (<i>f.</i>) feed me.
ይመገብው: let him feed him.		ትመገቢው: mayest thou feed him.
ይመገባት: let him feed her.		ትመገብያት: mayest thou feed her.
ይመገብን: let him feed us.		ትመገቢን: mayest thou feed us.
ይመገባችሁ: let him feed you.		ትመገብያቸው: { mayest thou feed them.
ይመገባቸው: let him feed them.		FIRST PERSON.
		እመገብህ: &c., assumes the Suffixes, like the 3d pers. masc.

THIRD PERSON.	PLURAL.	SECOND PERSON.
ይመገቡኝ: let them feed me.		ትመገቡ: the same as with the 3d pers. plural.
ይመገቡህ: let them feed thee.		FIRST PERSON.
ይመገቡሽ: let them feed thee.		እንመገብ: the same as with the 3d pers. sing.
ይመገቡዎ: let them feed you. (<i>h.1.</i>)		
ይመገብዎቻህ: { let them feed you. (<i>hon.2.</i>)		
ይመገቡት: let them feed him.		
ይመገቡት: let them feed her.		
ይመገቡን: let them feed us.		
ይመገብዎቻህ: let them feed you.		
ይመገብዎቸው: let them feed them.		

C. The *Imperative* joins the Suffixes in the same manner as the *Contingent*.

D. *Simple Constructive.*

Masculine.	THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
መገባኝ:	he feeding me.	መገባኝ: she feeding me.
መገባህ: }	he feeding thee.	መገባህ: }
መገባሽ: }		መገባሽ: }
መገባው: }	he feeding you.	መገባው: }
መገብዋችሁ: }		መገባችሁ: }
መገባት:	he feeding him.	መገባው: she feeding him.
መገብዋት:	he feeding her.	መገባት: she feeding her.
መገባኑ:	he feeding ^{PL.} us	መገባን: she feeding ^{PL.} us.
መገብዋችሁ:	he feeding you.	መገባችሁ: she feeding you.
መገብዋቸው:	he feeding them.	መገባቸው: she feeding them.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

መገባህን: thou feeding me. | መገባሽን: thou feeding me.

Assume the Suffixes like the same Persons in the Preterite.

Second Pers. Sing. honor. 3d and 2d Plural, the same as Preterite 3d and 2d Plural.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.	FIRST PERSON PLURAL.
መገባህ: }	መገባንህ: }
መገባሽ: }	መገባንሽ: }
መገባው: }	መገባንው: }
መገብዋችሁ: }	መገባንታችሁ: }
መገባው: I feeding him.	መገባንው: we feeding him.
መገብዋት: I feeding her.	መገባንታ: we feeding her.
መገብዋችሁ: I feeding you. (pl.)	መገባንችሁ: we feeding you. (pl.)
መገብዋቸው: I feeding them.	መገባንቸው: we feeding them.

NOTE.—Constructive Forms with the paragogic **ተ**: differ in nothing concerning the affixion of the Pronoun.

E. The Relative Participle treats the Suffixes like the Preterite Indicative and the Contingent.

2. *Forms with the Auxiliary አለ:: Infexion.*

INDICATIVE.

Present and Future.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR MASCULINE.

(See Contingent.)

ይመገብኛል:	he feeds me.
ይመገብሃል:	} he feeds thee.
ይመገብሻል:	
ይመገብዋል:	} he feeds you.
ይመገባችኋል:	
ይመገብዋል:	he feeds him.
ይመገባታል:	he feeds her.
ይመገብናል:	he feeds us.
ይመገባችኋል:	he feeds you.
ይመገባቸዋል:	he feeds them.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

ይመገቡኛል:	they feed me.
ይመገቡሃል:	} they feed thee.
ይመገቡሻል:	
ይመገቡዋችኋል:	} they feed you.
ይመገቡታል:	
ይመገቡታል:	they feed him.
ይመገቡዋታል:	they feed her.
ይመገቡናል:	they feed us.
ይመገቡዋችኋል:	they feed you.
ይመገቡዋቸዋል:	they feed them.

3d p. Sing. Fem.

2d Masc.

1st.. .. & P.

in the same manner
as the 3d pers. sing.
masc. with neces-
sary termination of
አለ::

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR FEMININE.

ትመገቢኛለሽ:	thou feedest me.
ትመገቢዋለሽ:	thou feedest him.
ትመገብያታለሽ:	thou feedest her.
ትመገቢናለሽ:	thou feedest us.
ትመገብያቸዋለሽ:	thou feedest them.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

ትመገቡኛለችሁ: &c., the same
with regard to Infixes as 3d p. pl.

Constructive Aorist.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

Masculine.

መገብኛል:	he feeds (fed &c.) me.
መገብሃል:	} he feeds (fed &c.) thee.
መገብሻል:	
መገብታል:	} he feeds (fed &c.) you
መገብዋችኋል:	
	(s. hon.)
መገብታል:	he feeds (fed &c.) him.
መገብዋታል:	he feeds (fed &c.) her.
መገብናል:	he feeds (fed &c.) us.
መገብዋችኛል:	he feeds (fed &c.) you.
መገብዋቸዋል:	he feeds (fed &c.) them.

Masculine.

መገብህኛል: thou feedest me, &c.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.

መገቢሃለሁ: I feed thee, &c.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

መገባችሁኛል: you feed me.

Feminine.

መገባኛለች:	she feeds me.
መገባሃለች:	} she feeds thee.
መገባሻለች:	
መገባዋለች:	} she feeds you.
መገባችኋለች:	
መገባዋለች:	she feeds him.
መገባታለች:	she feeds her.
መገባናለች:	she feeds us.
መገባችኋለች:	she feeds you.
መገባቸዋለች:	she feeds them.

Feminine.

መገብሽኛል: thou feedest me.

FIRST PERSON PLURAL.

መገብንሃል: we feed thee.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

መገብውኛል: they feed me.

Note.—The connexion of Negative as well as other Particles, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, will be noticed in the next Chapter.

CHAP. V.

ON THE ADVERBS.

1. The Amharic Adverbs are either *Separable* or *Inseparable*; and the Separable Adverbs are either *Simple* or *Compound*. The Simple Adverbs, again, are either *Original* or *Derived*. We have to consider, first, the *Simple Original* Adverbs.

2. The Simple Original Adverbs are to be subdivided into two classes; the first of which comprehends such Adverbs as express their ideas by themselves; the second, such as are usually connected with the Verbs **አለ**: "to say," **አደረገ**: or **አሰኘ**: "to do," "to make," "to induce."

(a) *First Class.*

መቼ: "when?"

ስንት: "how much?" "how many?"

ቀስ: "calmly," "cautiously," "quietly."

ብቻ: "but," "only," "singly." Is used also with Suffixes in the Accusative: **ብቻዎን**: "I alone," **ብቻህን**: "thou alone," &c.

ታላ: "quickly," "speedily."

ትላንት: and **ትላንትና**: "yesterday."

አመቶ: "last year."

ዘንድሮ: "this year."

ገና: "yet." With neg. "not yet."

አሁን: "now."

አንኳ: **ስንኳ**: Shoa, and Vulgar:

አኮ: "indeed," "even."

አንኳን: "no!"

አንጀ: "but," "except," "not including."

አንጀ: "I do not know."

አወን: "yes!"

ከተ: "thoroughly," "wholly," "fully." With negative "never," "nowhere," "not at all."

ወትሮ: "always."

ዛረ: "to-day," "now," "at present."

(b) *Second Class.*

PARTICLE

መር: of leaping, jumping.

ምር: of bitterness.

ልግም: of carelessness, idleness, and eye-service.

ሲጢ: of cracking.

ሰፈፍ: of soaring.

ሸተት: of gliding.

ቀስ: of caution, silence.

INSTANCES.

መር: **ደለል**: "he jumps."

ምር: **አለ**: "it was bitter."

ልግም: **ደለል**: "he acts carelessly," "is an eye-servant."

ሲጢ: **ደለል**: "it cracks."

ሰፈፍ: **ደለል**: "it soars."

ሸተት: **ደለል**: "he slips."

ቀስ: **ደለል**: "he acts cautiously."

በልጭ: of glimmering, glittering.

በትን: of scattering.

ቱሉ: of celerity.

ትፍ: of spitting from between
the lips.

ቸል: of neglect.

አልል: of shouting.

አምቢ: of refusing.

አቢ: of compliance.

አፍ: of blowing, fanning.

ክትት: of fulness, completion.

ከፍ: of highness, elevation.

ዘም: of silence.

ዝቅ: of lowness.

ዘለግ: of tallness, &c.

ደስ: of joy.

ደፅ: of slipperiness.

ገሥገሥ: of celerity.

፪: of completion.

ጭቅ: of spitting through the teeth.

ጸጥ: of silence, subsiding.

ፈቀቅ: of moving forwards.

ፍገምግ: of gliding.

በልጭ: ይላል: "it glimmers."

በትን: ይላል: "he scatters."

ቱሉ: ይላል: "he does quickly."

ትፍ: አለ: "he spat."

ቸል: ይለዋል: "he neglects him."

አልል: በል: "shout!"

አምቢ: አለ: "he refused."

አቢ: ይላል: "he yields, "is willing."

አፍ: በል: "blow," "fan."

ክትት: ይላል: "it is full," "done."

ከፍ: አደረገ: "he raised," "ele-
vated," "made high."

ዘም: አሰኘው: "he silenced him."

ዝቅ: አለ: "he was low," "stooped."

ዘለግ: ይላል: "he is tall and stout."

ደስ: አሰኘው: "he rejoiced,"
"pleased him."

ደፅ: አለ: "it was slippery."

ገሥገሥ: አለ: "he went quickly."

፪: አለ: "it was full," "entire."

ጭቅ: አለ: "he spat thro' the teeth."

ጸጥ: አለ: "it became quiet."

ፈቀቅ: አለ: "he proceeded," "went
further."

ፍገምግ: አደረገ: "he made to
glide."

Most of these particles seem to be originally intended for mere expressions of the natural sound of certain actions. Such is decidedly the case in **ሲጢጥ**: **ትፍ**: **ጭቅ**: **አልል**: **አፍ**: **ዋይ**. And their connexion with **አለ**: "to say," giving the idea that *e.g.* "to crack" is "to say *sif'it*"; to spit," is "to say *teff*" or "*tsh'ek*"; "to shout" is "to say *ellel*" (as is really the custom in the East *); "to blow" is "to say *eff*"; could lead us to rank the whole of this class rather with the Interjections, but that their connection with Verbs prohibits us, though several of these Particles are Interjections as well as Adverbs.

* See, in the Amharic Dictionary, **አልል**::

3. *Simple Derived Adverbs* are very numerous. They are derived from Nouns (Adjective and Substantive), and Verbs, and at least one Pronoun. Those derived from Nouns are not changed in form, but in the sense. Perhaps they may be considered as Accusatives, or having the Preposition **በ**: omitted. Such Nominal Adverbs are the following:

ORIGINAL SUBSTANTIVES.

ሚደ: { "outside," "abroad,"
 "within."
ነጋ: "to-morrow."
ሚላደ: "early in the morning."
ቅድም: "before," "previously."

ORIGINAL ADJECTIVES.

መልካም: "well," "properly."
ቅርብ: "near."
ክፋ: "badly."
ደህና: "well," "safely."
ታላቅ: "largely," "greatly."
እጅግ: "much," "very."

Besides these, perhaps every other Adjective may be used adverbially.

Simple Adverbs derived from Verbs:

አይደለም: "no."
ያህል: "nearly," "about."
ይልቅ: "more" (*magis*).

ደቅር: Particle of forgiveness; *e.g.*
ደቅር ይላል: "he forgives."

The Simple Constructive Mood is altogether used for Adverbs; *e.g.*

ደግሞ: {
መልሶ: } "again."
ሚላደ: "early in the morning."
ቅርብ: "near."
ብሉ: "saying," "thinking."
አብር: "together."

በዝቶ: "more."
ቀድሞ: "before," "previously."
አስቀድሞ: { "before," "in the
 beginning."
ጉድሉ: "wanting," "but."
አድርጎ: "doing."

Adverbs of uncertain origin are:

በጀ: (Shoa, **ባቡ**: and **ባሰኝ**;) "readily," "with pleasure!"

4. Compound Adverbs are formed, (a) by Prepositions and Nouns; (b) by Prepositions and Pronouns; (c) by Nouns and Nouns; (d) by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.

(a) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Nouns.*

በውሥጥ: { "internally," "within,"
"inside."

በሚያ: { "externally," "without,"
"outside."

በደህፍ: { "well," "safely," "in
health," "successfully"

በጥቂት: { "by little," "in a low
degree."

በጥቂት: በጥቂት: { "by little and
little," "gradually."

በጀግ: { "in a high degree," "in a
great measure."

በልክ: { "with measure," "mode-
rately."

በፍርሃት: { "with fear," "fearfully,"
"shyly," "cowardly."

በድፋረት: { "boldly," "courage-
ously."

በደስታ: "joyfully."

ከልልብ: { "from the heart,"
"heartily."

በፈቃድ: "willingly."

ባእምር: { "rationally," "reason-
ably."

በቸርነት: "kindly."

በምህረት: { "graciously," "mer-
cifully."

በፊት: "before," "previously."

በጥዋት: "in the morning."

በቀትር: "at noon."

በማታ: "in the evening."

በሊት: { "at night."

በሌሊት: { "at night."

ከድር: "from time immemorial."

በኋላ: "after," "afterwards."

በቀደም: "before."

በረቅ: "afar off," "at a distance."

በታች: "below."

ከታች: "from below."

ከበኋላ: "from behind."

በላይ: "above."

ከላይ: "from above."

በጣም: "entirely."

ልዘላለም: "for ever."

ከበፊት: { "from before," "from a
former time."

ከበላይ: "from above."

ከበታች: "from below."

(b) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Pronouns.*

በዚህ: (Shoa, **በዚህ:**) { "here,"
& **በዚህ:**) { "herein."

ከዚህ: (Shoa, **ከዚህ:**) { "here,"
& **በዚህ:**) { "from here,"
"hence."

ወደዚህ: (Shoa, **ወደዚህ:**) { "hither."
ወደዚህ: { & **ሀዚህ:**)

እንደዚህ: { "so," "thus."

እንዲህ: {

እንዲህ: "henceforth," "hence."

በዚያ: (Shoa, **በዚያ:**) { "there,"
& **በዚያ:**) { "therein."

ከዚያ: (Shoa, **ሀዚያ:**) { "there,"
"from there,"
"thence."

ወደዚያ: { "thither," "after,"
ወዲያ: { "beyond."

እስከዚያ: { "so far."

እስከዚያ: {

ከዚያ: **ወዲያ:** "afterwards."

ከንጊደህ: ወደህ: {	"from hence- forth."	አንጂት: "how?"
እስከዚህ: } "so far," "as far as እስተዚህ: } this," "up to this."		እንደታ: "to be sure!"
በየት: } "where?"		በስተያ: "after."
ወደት: }		ለምን: { "why?"
ከየት: } "whence?" "where- ከወደት: } from?"		ለመንድር: { "wherefore?"
		ስለ: ምን: { "on what ac- ስለ: ምንድር: } count?"

(c) *Adverbs formed by Nouns (Pronouns, Numerals) and Nouns.*

ዕለት: ዕለት: {	"every day," "daily."	ሁልጊዜ: {	"always," "continually," "constantly."
አፍ: ላፍ: {	"mouth to mouth," i.e. "by word of mouth," "vivā voce."	አንደጊዜ: "once." (See Numerals.)	
ፊት: ለፊት: {	"opposite," "over against each other."	የዚያን: ጊዜ: {	"then," "at that time."
		ምናልባት: "perhaps."	

(d) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.*

በራሱ: "by the head-side."	በግርጌ: "by the foot-side."
በጅጌ: "by the hand-side."	በደጅጋ: "near the door," &c.

5. *Inseparable Adverbs* are but few.

አ—:	} "not."
አል—ም:	
አ—ም:	

አል — : non—, un—, in—, &c. አዎ — : Distributive Particle.

—ን: Interrogative Particle.

The *Negative* Particles አ—: አል—ም: and አ—ም: are joined to the Finite Verb. አል—ም: is used throughout the Preterite, and with the 1st pers. sing. of the Present Tense. In the other personal forms, the ል: is ejected, and አ—ም: remains. The mere አ—: is used in the Subjunctive, and in all cases where the Negative Verb receives any additional Prefixes; e.g.

PRETERITE.

አልመጣም: "he came not."
አልመጣችም: "she came not."
አልመጣህም: "thou (*m.*) } camest
አልመጣሽም: "thou (*f.*) } not."
አልመጣሁም: "I came not."
አልመጡም: "they }
አልመጣችሁም: "you } came
አልመጣንም: "we } not."

SUBJUNCTIVE.

አይምጣ: “let him not come.”
አትምጣ: “let her not come.”
አትምጣ: *m.* } “do not thou come.”
አትምጢ: *f.* }
አይምጡ: } “do not you (hon.)
አትምጡ: } come.”
ላልመጣ: “I must not come.”
አይምጡ: “let them not come.”
አትምጡ: “do ye not come.”
ላንመጣ: “let us not come.”

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

አይመጣም: "he does not
 አትመጣም: "she come."
 አትመጣም: } "thou dost not
 አትመጥም: } come."
 አልመጣም: "I*
 አይመጡም: "they do not
 አትመጡም: "you come."
 አንመጣም: "we

With additional Prefixes, which absorb
the **h::**

ባይሒድ: “if he do not go.”
የሚተመልስ: { “(thou) who doest
not return.”
እንደታደርግ: { “that thou mayest
not do.”
ሳይበላ: { “without (his) eating,”
or “before he eats.”
ሳልማር: “before I learn.”

አለ—: is prefixed to Infinitives; e.g. **አለማወቅ**: "ignorance," i.e. the not knowing, non-intelligence. **አለማመን**: "unbelief." **አለመታዘዝ**: "disobedience," "insubordination," &c.

—ን: (in Shoa —ዐደ:) is a Particle of Interrogation, and affixed to any part of speech; *e.g.* ደህን ነን: “Art thou well?” ኧርቡን: ደህንን አደረገ: “Has he done this?”

CHAP. VI.

ON THE PREPOSITIONS, OR PARTICLES OF RELATION.

1. The term "Prepositions" for that part of speech which falls under the consideration of this Chapter, is not entirely suitable. It is a class which determines the relation between Nouns, Pronouns, or Verbs; and which, because in our European languages they are generally placed *before* the

* Mark the difference in pronunciation of the 1st pers. Present from the 3d pers. Preterite. The latter is pronounced "Almat'am"; the former "Alĕmat'am." In the 3d pers. sing. of the Preterite, the **Ā** is mute; but in the 1st pers. sing. of the Present, it is sounded, because in the latter the Preformative **h** which the **Ā** absorbs, must be heard.

object of relation, have been called Prepositions, but would be better called *Particles of Relation*; as this term would suit also in cases where the Particle is placed behind its object.

2. The Amharic Particles of Relation are partly *Simple*, partly *Compound*. The Simple ones are always *Pre-positions*; the Compound ones consist of *Pre- and Postpositions*. The Simple Prepositions are either *Separable* or *Inseparable*. The *Simple Separable Prepositions* are the following:

በለ: "for," "for the sake of," "in behalf," "instead of," "in favour of,"
"because," "on account of," "concerning," "on."

ወደ: "to," "towards."

ያለ: "without."

እንደ: "as," "like as," "according to," "in proportion to."

እስከ: "to," "up to," "reaching to," "till," "until."

Inseparable Prepositions are, **ለ—**: **በ—**: **ከ—**: **ጥ—**: **ኛ—**: or **ሀ—**:
እየ—:

ለ—: "to," "unto," "in favour of," "to the benefit of," "belonging to."

በ—: "in," "on," "upon," "at," "by," "through," "with," "against,"
"for (in exchange)," "over."

ከ—: "of," "out of," "from," "(more) than," "to."

ጥ—: "with (company)."

ኛ—: or **ሀ—**: vulgar, instead of **ከ—**: and of **በ—**:

እየ—: "in proportion to," "according to," &c., and Distributive.

Illustrations of the preceding Simple Prepositions.

(a) **በለ: እግዚአብሔር:** "For God's sake."

በለ: ንጢአቴ: እሞተሁ: "I die *on account* (because) of my sins."

በለንተ: መጣ: "He came *on thy account*."

በለ: ወደጄ: ደደከሙል: "He labours *for* (in behalf of) his friend."

በለ: ምንድር: "wherefore?"

ይህኛ: ምዕራፍ: በለ: ሃይማኖት: ተናገረላች: "This chapter treats *on* faith."

(b) **እንደ: ሰው:** "as a man," "according to (the manner of) men."

እንደ: ጴጥሮስ: "like as," or "resembling Peter."

እንደ: ፈቃድ: ያደርጋል: "He does *according to* his will," ("as he likes").

እንደ: ኃይሉ: "In *proportion to* his strength."

(c) **ወደ: ሐበሻ: ሔደ:** "He went *to* Abyssinia."

ፊትን: ወደርሱ: አደረገ: "He set his face *towards* him."

(d) **እስከ**: (sometimes **እስተ**;) is seldom used without a following **ድረስ**:, but sometimes it is used by itself; *e.g.*

እስከ ጎንደር ደሐደል: "It goes *as far as* Gondar," ("up to Gondar").

(e) **ለ** — : is used as a Universal Dative; *e.g.*

ለኔ ሰጠው: "He gave it *to* me."

ለኔ ነው: "It belongs *to* me."

ለምን (ለምንድር): "what *for*?" ("wherefore?")

ላክልኝ: signifies both "send *to* me," and "send *for* me," (in my favour, or behalf, to somebody else).

(f) **በቤት**: "*in* the house."

በእግዚአብሔር ያምናል: "He believes *in* God."

በወንጌል ያስተምራል: "He teaches (*in*) the Gospel."

በጥዋት: "*in* the morning."

በቀትር: "*at* noon."

በምድር: "*on* earth," "*on* the ground."

በድንገት: "*on* a sudden."

በሉንደን: "*at* (in) London."

በደጀ: "*at* the door."

ጸድቅ በሃይማኖት ይደናል: "The just shall live *by* faith."

በገሐርቱ በምድር: "*By* sea and *by* land."

በሚያስችልኝ በክርስቲስ: "*Through* him that strengtheneth me; *through* Christ."

በወርቅና በብር ገዛው: "*With* gold and *with* silver did he purchase it."

ጸላቴ መጣበኝ: "My enemy came *upon* (against) me."

ይፈረድበታል: "He judges *over* him" (or, in contrast with **ለ**—: "pronounces judgment *against*, condemns him.")

ይቅር በላኔ በኛ ያለውን: "Forgive us that which is *against* us;" *i.e.* "forgive us our debts," Matt. vi. 12.

በስድስት ብር ይሸጠዋል: "He sells it *for* six dollars."

ድል ነሣበት: "He gained the victory *over* him."

(g) **ከቤቱ ወጣ**: "He went *out of* his house."

ከርሱ ወሰድሁት: "I took it *from* him."

ከኔ ይበልጣል: "He is greater *than* I."

ከርሱ ያንሳል: "He is inferior *to* him."

(h, i) **ጥ**: and **ፄ**: or **ሀ**: are frequently used in vulgar, but not in good language. (See the Dictionary.)

(k) **እዋ**—: is a Preposition, Distributive and of Proportion. It is related to **እንደ**: and has been mentioned already with the Numerals as a Distributive Particle. Other instances are these: **እየዘመደ**: “according to its kind.” **እየሠረዘ**: “in his respective order.”

3. The Compound Particles of Relation are formed by any of the Simple Prepositions, connected with Nouns, or other Particles. The latter (Postpositions) are either directly joined to the former, or follow after the Noun or Pronoun to which they refer. We shall first give here a list of Postpositions; then show how they are combined with Simple Prepositions; and afterwards exhibit their use, by expressions of daily occurrence in conversation.

List of Postpositions.

ውስጥ: “the inside.”

ኋላ: “what is behind.”

ላይ: “high,” “upper,” “elevated.”

ፊት: “face,” “fore-part,” “surface.”

ታች: “that which is below.”

አጠገብ: “the side.”

መካከል: “the middle.”

ዙርያ: “surrounding place.”

አንጻር: “front.”

ዘንድ: } particles of company.
ጋራ: }

ድረስ: particle of extent.

መጠን: “proportion.”

ልክ: “measure.”

በቀር: particle of omission.

እኩል: “equal,” “equality.”

መክንያት: “reason,” “cause.”

ፈንታ: “portion,” “stead,” “part.”

They are thus combined with Simple Prepositions:

በውስጥ: and **በ**—: **ውስጥ**: “within,” “inside.”

በኩል: “about,” “in the vicinity,” “direction.”

በዙርያ: and **በ**—: **ዙርያ**: “surrounding,” “round about.”

በፊት: “before,” “previous to,” “in sight of,” “in front of.”

በኋላ: and **ከ**—: **በኋላ**: “behind,” “after.”

በታች: and **ከ**—: **በታች**: “below,” “under.”

በ—: **ዘንድ**: “by,” “with.”

ከ—: **ዘንድ**: “from,” “from with.”

እስከ: —: **ድረስ**: “till,” “up to,” “to,” “as far as.”

በ—: **ልክ**: “in proportion to.”

በመክንያት: and **በ**—**መክንያት**: “for the sake of,” “on account of,” “because of.”

በላይ: and **ከ—:** **በላይ:** “on,” “upon,” “above,” “over,” “against.”

ባጠገብ: “beside,” “by.”

በመካከል: and **በ—:** **መካከል:** “among,” “between.”

ከ—: **ጋራ:** “with,” “together with.”

በመጠን: and **በ—:** **መጠን:** “in proportion to.”

ከ—: **በቀር:** “without,” “excepting.”

በ—: **ፈንታ:** “instead of.”

ባንጻር: and **በ—:** **አንጻር:** “in front of,” “opposite.”

Instances for illustration:

በወሥጡ: “*within him.*”

ባገር: **ወሥጥ:** “*within the country.*”

በሎንደን: **በኩል:** “*in the vicinity of London.*”

ከቀትር: **በኋላ:** “*after midday,*” i.e. “*in the afternoon.*”

በታችኛን: “*under us.*”

ከሳድቃ: **በታች:** “*under the table.*”

በኔ: **ዘንድ:** “*with or by me.*”

ከጌታው: **ዘንድ:** **መጣ:** “*He came from (from with) his master.*”

እስከ: **ዛረ:** **ድረስ:** “*to this day.*”

እስከ: **ኒጋ:** **ድረስ:** “*till to-morrow.*”

በዚያ: **ልክ:** “*in that measure,*” i.e. so large &c. as that.

በመክንያትህ: “*on thy account,*” “*for thy sake.*”

በልጄ: **መክንያት:** “*because of his son.*”

በዙርያው: “*round about him.*”

ባገር: **ዙርያ:** “*in the environs of (round about) the town.*”

በፊትኛው: **ሔደ:** “*he went before them.*”

በምድር: **ላይ:** “*on the earth.*”

ከቤቱ: **በላይ:** “*above his house.*”

በስፍራ: **አጠገብ:** “*by the side of the place.*”

በንጉሥ: **ላይ:** **ተነሣ:** “*He rose against the king.*”

በሰዎች: **መካከል:** “*among men.*”

በኔ: **በርሱ:** **መካከል:** “*between me and him.*”

ካባቱ: **ጋራ:** **ሔደ:** “*He went with his father.*”

በውቀቱ: **መጠን:** “*in proportion to his knowledge.*”

ሁላቸው: **ከርሱ:** **በቀር:** **ይጽፋሉ:** “*They all write excepting him.*”

በኔ: **ፈንታ:** **ይቀበለዋል:** “*He receives it, instead of me.*”

በቤት: **አንጻር:** “*opposite the house.*”

ILLUSTRATIONS:

ንጉሥ፣ ንግሥት፡ መጡ፡ ሔደዋል፡ “The king *and* the queen came *and* went.”

ደር፡ ሉላልታቸው፡ ተቀመጡ፡ “But their servants remained”; or,
ሉላልታቸው፡ ገን፡ ተቀመጡ፡፡

መቶ፡ ካምባ፡ “One hundred and fifty.”

እርሱ፡ ደግሞ፡ እንደህ፡ አለኝ፡ “He *also* told me so.”

ይህ፡ ሁሉ፡ ሳይቀር፡ “Notwithstanding all this.”

ይህን፡ አልባም፡ ያነ፡ እንጂ፡ “I do not want this, *but* that.”

ምን፡ ትፈልጋለህ፡ መጽሐፉን፡ ወይስ፡ ብሩን፡ “What doest thou want, the book *or* the money?”

ወይስ፡ ይህን፡ ወይስ፡ ይህን፡ ልትድርግ፡ “Either this *or* that must thou do (art thou *to* do).”

እርሱስ፡ እንደ፡ ሔደ፡ አየሁ፡ ነገር፡ ገን፡ አንተ፡ እንድትከት፡ አልሔደም፡፡ “Indeed, *that* he has gone, I have seen; *but* in order *that* thou shouldst be lazy, he did not go,” (“was not his object in going”).

እማር፡ ዘንድ፡ (or ልማር፡) እወደለሁ፡ “I like *to* learn.”

መጽሐፍ፡ ባገኝ፡ በወደድሁ፡ “I should like *to* get a book.”

ክትጫወት፡ ብትማረ፡ ይሻልሃል፡ “If thou learnest, that will be better for thee *than* if thou playest.”

እንተ፡ ብትለምን፡ እርሱ፡ ቢሰጠህ፡ ነበር፡ “If thou wouldest ask, he would give thee.”

ጌታው፡ ሲቀመጥ፡ ሉሉ፡ ይሔዳል፡ “While the master remains, the servant goes.”

እስክመጣ፡ ድረስ፡ ቀይዳኝ፡ “Wait for me *till* I come.”

መምጣትስ፡ እመጣለሁ፡ “As for coming, I shall come.”

አንተሳ፡ “But thou?” (emphatic, “what wilt thou do?”)

ታምዋል፡ አይመጣም፡ “Because he is sick, he does not come.”



CHAP. VIII.

ON THE INTERJECTIONS.

1. We notice first those Particles which, when combined with the Verbs **አለ**: **አደረገ**: and **አሰኘ**., constitute Verbs (See Ch. V. 2.); but when used by themselves, are Interjections. They are the following:

Particles	Signification.	Particles	Signification.
ዝም :	of silence, { "tush!" "quiet!"	አሺ :	of compliance, { "yes," "readily."
ቀስ :	of caution, { "mind!" "softly!"	አምቢ :	of refusing, "I will not!"
ተሉ :	of haste, "quickly!"	አላላ :	of exultation, { "hurrah!" "huzzah!"
ክትት :	of completion { "done!" "finished!" "full!"		

2. The remaining Particles of Exclamation are as follows:

ሆደ :	of address, "oh!"	አደ :	{ of commise- ration, } "oh!"
ቆላ :	of expulsion, "begone!"	ወዋ :	{ of lamentation, { "alas!" "woe!"
አወደ :	of joy, "eh!" "aha!"	ዋደ :	{ of lamentation { "woe!" & abhorrence, { "alas!" "fie!"
አከሆ :	of attention, { "look!" "behold!"	ዕፁብ :	{ of asto- } "oh wonder!"
አረገ :	{ contradiction, { "oh!" complaint, { "far be it!" abhorrence, { "fie!"	ወደጉድ :	{ nishment } "dear me!"
አቢት :	{ of courtesy, } "Sir!" of address, } "O Lord!"		
አኮ :	{ of assent, { "to be sure!" "no doubt!"		
አንጂጥ :			
ቢዛ :	{ of sudden { "I hope you have not hurt yourself!" <i>lit.</i> "substi- sympathy, { tute," <i>i.e.</i> I should have preferred the accident to have happened to me, instead of you!		

PART III.—SYNTAX.
ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS,
AND THEIR
CONSTRUCTION INTO SENTENCES.

~~~~~  
CHAP. I.

ON THE NATURE OF SENTENCES, ESPECIALLY IN THE AMHARIC  
LANGUAGE.

1. A *sentence* is an aggregate of words expressing a judgment of the mind. It is either simple, complex, or compound. The constituent parts of every sentence are, a subject, an attribute, a copula, and an object; the latter, however, being less necessary than the three former. *Simple* sentences are such as have nothing but these parts; *e.g.*

**ምድር፡ ሰፊ፡ ነች፡** "The earth is spacious."

**ንጉሥ፡ መጣ፡** "The king has come."

**አንበሳ፡ ፈረሰን፡ ገጃለ፡** "The lion killed a horse."

NOTE.—The Copula, or Joining Verb, which connects the subject with the attribute, is frequently joined with the latter in one and the same verb; *e.g.* **ንጉሥ፡ መጣ፡** :: Here **መጣ፡** contains the attribute of **ንጉሥ፡** ("king"), which is, "one that came," together with the Copulative Verb "is."

2. *Complex* sentences are such as are amplified by qualifying words in connection with either the subject or the attribute; *e.g.*

**ልጄ፡ ዛሬ፡ መጣ፡** "My son came to-day."

Here is the subject, **ልጄ፡** "son," qualified by the pronoun *፤*, "my," and the attribute "who came," (contained in the verb **መጣ፡** "came," with the copula "is,") by the adverb **ዛሬ፡** "to-day."

3. *Compound* sentences are such as have either the subject, or the attribute, or the object, or all of them, augmented by additional or explanatory parts; *e.g.*

**ወታደር፡ ነጋዴ፡ ገባረም፡ የሚጠቅሙ፡ ሰዎች፡ ናቸው፡**

"The soldier, the merchant, and the farmer, are useful men."



## CHAP. II.

## ON THE SUBJECT AND THE ATTRIBUTE, AND THEIR RELATION TO EACH OTHER.

SECTION I.—*On the Subject.*

1. The *subject* is the principal or the reigning part of every sentence : it therefore stands always in the *Nominative Case*: *e.g.*

**ሰው፡ ይሞታል፡** “man dies.”

2. The ideal subject is always a Noun Substantive: the grammatical subject may be a Substantive, Adjective, Numeral, Pronoun, an Infinitive, or Participle: for words which express no perfect ideas by themselves, *i.e.* which are not substances, cannot form subjects of thought, unless they be at least ideally converted into substantives.

3. In every sentence, the subject precedes; the attribute and the copula follow; *e.g.*

**እርሱ፡ ደህ፡ ነው፡** “He is good.”

This is always the case, whether the Subject be simple, defined, complex, or compound.

4. When the Subject is specified by a Substantive, an Adjective, a Numeral, Pronoun, or Participle, the specifying words precede; *e.g.*

**የሰው፡ ልብ፡ ክፋ፡ ነው፡** “Man’s heart is evil.”

**በጎ፡ ሰው፡ ይከብራል፡፡** “A good man is honoured.”

**ሰባት፡ ቀን፡ አለፈ፡** “Seven days passed.”

**ደህ፡ ቤት፡ ሰፊ፡ ነው፡** “This house is spacious.”

**የተሠራ፡ ቤት፡ ሰፊ፡ ነው፡** “The house which has been built, is spacious.”

**እግዚአብሔርን፡ መፍራት፡ ከላንት፡ ጋራ፡ ይሁን፡**

“May the fear of the Lord be with you.”—2 Chron. xix. 7.

5. A Compound Subject, which consists of several Nouns, Numerals, or Pronouns, has all these parts in the Nominative Case; *e.g.*

**ሰማይ፡ ምድር፡ ያልፋሉ፡** “Heaven and earth shall pass away.”

**እልዩ፡ መቶ፡ ከሰማንያ፡ ሰዎች፡ ሐደ፡** “Those hundred and eighty men have gone.”

6. Where the Subject is connected with subordinate explanatory parts, it follows after them; *e.g.* Luke xii. 47.

**የጌተውን፡ ፈቃድ፡ አውቆ፡ ያልተዘጋጀ፡ አንድ፡ ፈቃደኛ፡  
ያላደረገ፡ ባርያ፡ እጅግ፡ ይገረፋል፡**

Literally: "His Lord's will knowing who prepared not himself, according to his will and did not the servant, much shall be scourged;"  
*i.e.* "That servant who knew his Lord's will, and prepared not himself, neither did according to his will, shall be severely scourged."

These two rules, No. 4, and 6, are so peculiarly in the Amharic idiom, that they cannot fail to impress themselves at once upon the mind of the Student.

## SECTION II.

### *On the Attribute, and its relations to the Subject.*

1. The Attribute may be a Substantive, or an Adjective, or Pronoun, or Participle: it may be separate, or implied in the Verb.

#### EXAMPLES.

**እግዚአብሔር፡ መንፈስ፡ ነው፡** "God is *a Spirit*."

**ይህ፡ ሰው፡ አዋቂ፡ ነው፡** "This man is *intelligent*."

**ነገሩ፡ ይህ፡ ነው፡** "The matter is *this*."

**ፈቃዱ፡ የተቀረጠ፡ ነው፡** "His resolution is *decided*." Acts xix. 7.

**ሰዎችም፡ አሥራ፡ ሁለት፡ ነበሩ፡** "And the men were *twelve*."

**እርሱ፡ ይፈራል፡** "He fears," *i.e.* "is *fearing*."

2. Complex Attributes (see Ch. I. 2.) have their subordinate parts before them.

#### EXAMPLE.

**ይህ፡ ሰው፡ በስራው፡ ሁሉ፡ ተንኮለኛ፡ ነው፡**

Lit. "This man, in his work all, is cunning"—"is cunning in all his doings."

3. The Attribute always follows the Subject. This is evident from the preceding instances.

4. It often agrees with the Subject in Gender, Number, and Case: often does not. As to the Gender, the concordance may be assumed, most of the Nominal forms being of Common Gender; and, in the Adjective Participles at least, the Gender is strictly attended to. Concerning Number, the Singular is more used in Adjectives than the Plural; which may be accounted for by the supposition, that they are regarded as an abstract mass, of which the individual subjects have their share; *e.g.*

**እሌህ፡ ሰዎች፡ ደህና፡ ናቸው፡** "These men are good."

But when the Attribute is a Relative Participle, it must agree in Number,

as well as in Gender, Case, and Person, (see Page 73.) with its subject; *e.g.*

**ሉላልቱ፡ የታመኑ፡ ናቸው።** "His servants are faithful."

The Number is especially uncertain, when the Subject is a Collective Noun; *e.g.*

**ሰው፡ ሁሉ፡ ይሞታል፡** "All men (or every man) dies."

**ሕዝቡ፡ ተሰበሰቡት፡** (Sing.) or **ተሰበሰቡ፡** (Pl.) "The people was (or were) gathered together."

With regard to Case, we remember but one instance where the Subject and the Attribute do not agree; **ብቻ፡** with Suffixes; *e.g.*

**እኔ፡ ብቻየን፡ ነኝ፡** "I am alone."

Here is the Subject **እኔ፡** in the Nominative, and the Attribute **ብቻየን፡** in the Accusative Case.

### CHAP. III.

#### VARIOUS USES AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE NOUN.

##### A. *Construction of Substantives with Substantives.*

1. Two or more Substantives connected together, denoting the same thing, are in a state of apposition, and must agree in Gender and Number; *e.g.*

**እግዚአብሔር፡ አምላክ፡** "The Lord God."

**ወንድ፡ ባርያ፡** "a man-slave."

**ንጉሥ፡ ደዋት፡** "King David," & **ደዋት፡ ንጉሥ፡** "David, the king."

**ሻንክሎች፡ ባሮች፡** "Negroes," "slaves"; *i.e.* "Negro-slaves."

2. Nouns of *Quantity* are joined to other Substantives in the Nominative Case; *e.g.*

**ጥቂት፡ ብር፡** "a little silver."

**አንድ፡ ነጥር፡ ቡን፡** "one pound (of) coffee."

**አንድ፡ ገምቦ፡ ውኃ፡** "one jar (of) water."

3. Substantives of *Quality*, of *Origin*, or of *Possession*, are joined to other Substantives. They stand in the Genitive Case; *e.g.*

**የደንጊያ፡ ቤት፡** "a house (made) of stone."

**የጤፍ፡ ጣቢታ፡** "Têff-bread-cakes."

**ያገር፡ ሰው፡** "a man of the country"; or the Ethiopic expression,  
**ባላገር።**

**የገባረ፡ መረሻ፡** "the farmer's plough."

More about this when we come to speak of the Genitive Case. (See p. 167.)

4. On the construction of Object-Substantives with Subject-Substantives we shall speak when coming to consider the Verb. (See Ch. VIII.)

### B. Construction of Adjectives with Substantives.

Adjectives may be connected with Substantives, (a) either as epithets to the Subject; or (b) as Attributes of the sentence; or (c) as modified by another accompanying Substantive.

1. As *Epitheton* of a Substantive, the Adjective generally *precedes* the latter; e.g. በጎ፡ ሰው፡ “a good man.”

2. In Number and Gender, the Epithetic Adjective does not always agree with its Substantive; but the following rules are observed:

(a) The Substantive may be in the Plural, and the Adjective in the Singular Number; never the reverse; e.g.

ጽሁፍ፡ መጻሕፍት፡ “good books”; never ጽሁፍች፡ መጻሕፍ፡፡

(b) In the same manner, the Adjective is most frequently used in the Masculine form, when the Substantive is of Feminine Gender; but a Feminine Adjective is never used for a Masculine Substantive; e.g.

ክፋ፡ ሴት፡ “a bad woman,” but not ንጽሕት፡\* ወንድ፡ “a pure man.”

3. The preceding paragraph refers not to Participial Adjectives of the Relative form, as in them the strictest attention is paid both to Number and Gender. (See Page 163. §. 4.)

4. When the Adjective is *attribute* to the sentence, the rules laid down in the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. §§ 3, 4. obtain.

5. When another qualifying Substantive is connected with the Adjective, a Relative Participle is required as complement; e.g.

በልግቸው፡ ንጽሐን፡ ያሉ፡ ሰዎች፡ “Men who are pure in their hearts.”

### C. Number of Nouns.

There is a strong tendency in the Abyssinians to use the Singular Number, where we would use the Plural. We shall point out several cases where the latter never, and others where it but seldom is used, although it would be impossible, in the present stage of our knowledge of the

\* We do not quote ክፍላት፡, the Feminine form of ክፋ፡, because it is not used in the Amharic, nor the Participle የክፋች፡፡ because, when Adjective-Participles are used, the Gender and Number is always strictly attended to. (See the preceding Chap. Sect. II. § 4.)

Amharic language, to give rules for every case, and would exceed the bounds which must be assigned to this head. The following classes are, some of them, never, others, seldom used in the Plural:

1. Nouns denoting a mass; as, gold, silver, corn, wheat, honey, fat, dust, &c.

2. Several parts of the animal body; *e.g.*

**ልብ**: "the heart."

**ሆድ**: "the belly."

**ደም**: "blood."

**ሥጋ**: "flesh."

**ጽኑር**: "hair."

3. The soul, and several powers and faculties of the mind:

**ገፍብ**: "the soul."

**ፈቃድ**: "the will."

**አሳብ**: "thought."

**ልቡፍ**: "reason."

**ወድ**: "love."

**ፍቅር**: "charity."

**ደስታ**: "joy."

**አለኝታ**: "hope."

4. Most Abstract Nouns, denoting quality, condition, action, quantity. We especially refer to the two Tables of Nominal Forms. Table I: Triliteral Radices of Verbs, No. 5. and Quadriliteral ones of No. 4. Table II: Simple Forms of 3. A. a. 4. 6.; and Augmented Forms, 1. a. c.; some of *d.*; and almost all of *e.*

5. The following Collective Nouns are not often used in the Plural:

(a) Generical names of animals and of plants; *e.g.*

**ጅብ**: "hyæna."

**አበባ**: "flower."

(b) Names of assemblages of men, or other beings; *e.g.* **ወገን**: "tribe," "sect," "kind," &c. The Plural of this word, **ወገኖች**: signifies the individuals belonging to the whole assemblage. **ሸንገ**: "court of justice," **አገር**: "town," "country," and other words.

6. Certain periods of time: **ቀን**: "day." **ሊት**: and **ሌሊት**: "night." **ሰዓት**: "hour." **ቀትር**: "noon." **ረፈድ**: "forenoon." These are never used in the Plural number. Seldom: **ጊዜ**: "time." **ዘመን**: "time," "period." **አመት**: "year." **ሳምንት**: "week."

7. Several Nouns denoting confines, borders, shores, &c.; *e.g.* **ደር**: "banks," "shores," "coast." **ደርቻ**: "borders." **ወሰን**: "confines," "borders." **ዘርፍ**: "seam," "hem."

8. As to the agreement in Number between Nouns in the same sentence, either Subjects or Attributes, see the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. 4.; and in this Chapter, A. 1. and B. 2.

#### D. On the Various Cases of Declension.

1. The *Nominative* is, in common conversation, often improperly used

where the Preposition **ወደ** should stand; *e.g.* **አንጎላላ፡ ሔደ፡** "He went Angollala," omitting **ወደ**፡ "to."

2. It is applied in answer to the question, How long? How often? How much? *e.g.*

**ሶስት፡ ቀን፡ ተቀመጠ፡** "He remained three days."

**ብዙ፡ ጊዜ፡ መጣ፡** "He came many times."

**አንድ፡ መድኃ፡ ገብሰ፡** "One mādēga (a certain measure) barley."

3. The Genitive Case expresses:

(a) *Possession* :

**ያባቴ፡ ቤት፡** "My father's house." **የንጉሥ፡ ኃይል፡** "The king's power."

(b) *Origin* :

**የምድር፡ ፍረ፡** "The fruit of the earth."

**የሐበሻ፡ ሰው፡** "A man of (from) Abyssinia," *i.e.* "An Abyssinian."

(c) *Quality* :

**የብረት፡ እቃ፡** "Iron furniture." **የደንጊያ፡ ቤት፡** "A house of stone."

Here it supplies the place of Adjectives.

(d) *Measure of time, space* :

**የሰባት፡ አመት፡ ስራ፡** "The work of seven years."

**የሁለት፡ ቀን፡ መንገድ፡** "Two days' journey."

(e) *Price and Quantity* :

**ያንድ፡ ብር፡ ቡን፡** "One dollar's (worth) of coffee."

4. When Prepositions precede the word which stands in the Genitive Case, the **P** is dropped. See Part I. Ch. VII. 3. B.

5. When an Accusative follows the Genitive, the latter adopts the mark **ን** of the former, so that the word seems to stand both in the Genitive and in the Accusative; *e.g.*

**ያገርን፡ ከተማ፡ አየሁ፡** "I have seen the capital of the country."

**የእግዚአብሔርን፡ የምላክህን፡ ስም፡ ከንቱ፡ አታድርገው፡**

"Thou shalt not use the name of the Lord thy God in vain." Ex. xx. 7.

6. When the Genitive belongs to several Substantives in apposition, its **P** is to be applied to each; when to a Substantive preceded by an Epithetical Adjective, it is applied only to the Adjective; *e.g.*

**የደዊት፡ የንጉሥ፡ የነቢይ፡ መዝሙራት፡** "The Psalms of David, (of) the King, and (of the) Prophet."

**የጽሁፍ፡ ሰው፡ ነገር፡** "The words of a good man."

7. When the Genitive belongs to a Substantive having several Epithetic

Adjectives, the **P:** is applied to each Adjective, and may, or may not, be applied to the Substantive also; *e.g.*

**የተላቅፍ፡ የጠቢብ፡ የባላጠጋም፡ የሰሎሞን፡ ቤተ፡ መቅደስ፡**  
or **የተላቅፍ፡ የጠቢብ፡ የባላጠጋም፡ ሰሎሞን፡ ቤተ፡ መቅደስ፡፡**

“The temple of the great, wise, and wealthy Solomon.”

8. The Ethiopic Genitive, or Status Constructus, has been mentioned, Part II. Ch. I. Sect. I. 4. and Sect. V. 2.

9. The *Dative* being formed by the prefixion of the Preposition **ለ:** (*to, for, in favour, in behalf, &c.*) to the Noun, we need only to refer to what has been said, Part II. Ch. VI. 2. *e.*

10. The *Accusative* Case is formed by the annexion of **ን:** at the end: it serves to indicate the immediate or direct action of the Subject upon its object; and is required by all Active, Intensive, Transitive, and Causative Verbs; *e.g.*

**ሰውን፡ ለደደ፡** “He sent a man.”

Although this rule is very plain, it may not be superfluous to specify it a little. The Accusative is governed—

(a) By the Verb Finite; *e.g.*

**መልእክትን፡ ይጽፋል፡** “He writes a letter.”

**ተገባርህን፡ አድርግ፡** “Do thy business.”

**በትረን፡ ይዞ፡ ሔደ፡** “He took his stick, and went.”

(b) By the Infinitive; *e.g.*

**በጎውን፡ ስራ፡ መስራት፡ አያውቅም፡** “He knows not to perform (cannot perform) good works.”

(c) By Relative Participles; *e.g.*

**ይህንን፡ ያደረገ፡** “He who has done this.”

**ልጄን፡ የሚወድ፡** “He that loves his child.”

(d) By Nominal Active Participles; *e.g.*

**ቤትን፡ ሠራ፡** “One that builds a house.”

11. Besides Active Verbs, there are a few phrases in which the Accusative is used; *e.g.*

**መንገዴን፡ እሔዳለሁ፡** “I go my way.”

**ቤቱን፡ ገባ፡** “He entered his house.”

**ብቻ፡** “alone,” “single,” with Suffixes, assumes the Accusative form, when it is converted into an Adverb; *e.g.*

**ብቻውን፡ ነበረ፡** “He was by himself.”

12. When the Noun which stands in the Accusative terminates in a

letter of the third, fourth, fifth, or seventh order, a euphonic **ው**: is joined before the accusative **ን**:: *e.g.*

**ጠገቂውን፡ መንጋውንም፡ በረውንም፡ ቀበሮውንም፡ አሁ፡**

“I saw the herdsman, the herd, the oxen, and the fox.”

12. Relative Participles in **ህ**, standing in the Accusative, have a euphonic **ት**: before the accusative **ን**:; *e.g.*

**የሁትን፡ የገደሉትንም፡ በረ፡** “The ox which I saw, and which they killed.”

13. Accusative Nouns ending in the sixth order are euphonicallly changed into the second; Accusative Participles, into the first order; the latter receiving a euphonic **ው**::; *e.g.*

**መልካሙን፡ ጸጅ፡** “good wine.”

**የደረገህውን፡ ታጢአት፡** “The sin which thou hast committed.”

14. When a Descriptive Adjective is connected with the Noun standing in the Accusative, the **ን**: is not generally affixed to both, but sometimes to the Substantive, sometimes to its epitheton; when the latter is a Participle, to the Participle: *e.g.* it is equally good to say **ደህ፡ ሰውን፡** or **ደህውን፡ ሰው፡** “a good man,” but with a Participle; *e.g.*

**የበላሽውን፡ እንጅራ፡** “The bread which thou (*f.*) hast eaten.”

15. When several Adjectives are connected with a Substantive in the Accusative Case, the **ን**: is put to each of the Adjectives, but not to the Substantive; *e.g.*

**ተላቁን፡ ወፍራሙንም፡ በጎ፡ ፍረንም፡ የምትፈራውን፡ ዛፍ፡ ቀ-ረጠ፡** “They cut down a large, thick, and good-fruit-bearing tree,” *i.e.* “a large and thick tree which bore good fruit.”

16. Concerning the construction of the Genitive with the Accusative, see §. 5.



## CHAP. IV.

## ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

1. The Amharic Language has almost the same mode of comparing things with each other as the Hebrew; namely, especially by prefixing the Preposition **ከ**: “of,” “from,” to the Positive Noun or Pronoun; *e.g.*

**ከመታከት: መማር: ይቫላል:** “Learning is better than to be idle.”

2. In many cases, they add the Postpositive Particle **ይልቅ**: which gives, however, no additional force to the idea of gradation already expressed by **ከ**:; but it stands generally at the end of a sentence, and is used more for Verbs than for Adjectives; *e.g.*

**ይህኛ: ዛፍ: ትረዝማለኝ: ከዚያኛ: ይልቅ:**

“This tree is tall, more than that one.”

Here it would be equally good to say,

**ይህኛ: ዛፍ: ከዚያኛ: ትረዝማለኝ:** “This tree is taller than that one.”

3. The Verbs **በለጠ**: “is greater,” **አነሰ**: “is smaller,” “less,” and **ተቫለ**: “is better,” are in themselves of a comparative nature: nevertheless, when brought together with other Adjectives or Verbs for comparison, they require the **ከ**—: as well as Adjectives or other Verbs; *e.g.*

**ጥበብ: ከክብት: ይቫላል:** “Wisdom is better than wealth.”

**ዘሆን: ከአፆፕ: ይበልጣል:** “An elephant is larger than a mouse.”

**አንገላላ: ከአንቡር: ታንሳለኝ:** “Angollala is smaller than Ankobar.”

4. Besides the preceding, every verb of quality, condition, or even of action, is capable of expressing a comparison when constructed with **ከ**: for the adjective is contained in that verb; *e.g.*

**ተራራ: ከዛፍ: ይረዝማል:** “A mountain is higher than a tree.”

**ጌጢአት: ከሞት: ትከፋለኝ:** “Sin is worse than death.”

Verbs of action, however, require **ይልቅ**: *e.g.*

**ከጴጥርስ: ይልቅ: ጳውሎስ: ደከመ:** “Paul laboured more than Peter.”

5. The Superlative is rendered by **ከሁሉ**: (with Suffixes) and **ከሁሉ: ይልቅ**: *e.g.*

**ምድር: ታላቅ: ነት: ዓለም: ይበልጣል: እግዚአብሔር: ጥን: ከሁሉ: ይበልጣል:** “The earth is great; the universe is greater; but God is greatest (of all).”

**ከሁላቸው: ይልቅ: እርሱ: ተማረ:** “He learned more than they all.”

## CHAP. V.

## ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numeral does not, properly speaking, form a particular part of speech, but is either, as the Cardinals, a Substantive, or, as are the Ordinals, an Adjective, or, as the Distributive, an Adverb. We need therefore to say but little about their Syntax.

2. The Cardinal Numbers are always, when connected with other Nouns, to be considered as in apposition with them; and they always precede; *e.g.*

**ሁለት ሰዎች**: "two men."

3. All the Numbers, from One upwards, seem to be considered as Plurals; wherefore they are of common gender, except **አንድ**: "one," which has in the feminine, **አንዷ**:

4. Notwithstanding this, the noun to which the numeral is joined, is not always used in the plural number. Although they use, in common language, the singular and the plural indiscriminately, the rule seems to hold good, that the round numbers, ten, twenty, &c. up to a hundred, and the large numbers, as hundred, thousand, ten thousand (**አልፎ**: *μύριοι*), are more frequently constructed with the noun in the singular than in the plural, and the numbers between every ten generally in the plural; *e.g.*

**ሁለት ሰዎች**: "two men."      **ህያ ሰው**: "twenty man."

5. The Numbers **ህያ**: **ሥላሳ**: **አርባ**: **አምስት**: **ስድስት**: **ሰባ**: **ስመንያ**: **ዘጠኝ**: **መቶ**:: are generally used for Ordinals as well as for Cardinals; or rather, as they do not like to adopt the ordinal form for those numbers, they place the cardinal behind the noun as a predicate; *e.g.*

**መጽሐፍ ህያ**: "book twenty," instead of **ህያኛ መጽሐፍ**: "the twentieth book."

6. The form of the Ordinal Numbers is regularly derived from the Cardinals; except, as in our European and in other languages, the first; although in compound numbers that also is used in the regular form; *e.g.*

**አሥራ አንደኛ**: "the eleventh."

When used in a simple form, **አንደኛ**: signifies "unique," "sole," "only." In enumeration, they use **መጀመሪያ**: "the beginning," or **ፊተኛ**: "the foremost," "first."

7. As for the Distributives, nothing needs to be added to what has been said Part II. Ch. II. §. 4.

## CHAP. VI.

## SYNTAX OF THE SEPARABLE PRONOUNS.

## 1. The Separable Personal Pronoun is used,

(a) When it is the subject of a sentence. **ኔ፤ ንሐያለሁ፡** "I go," although it is not necessary to use it.

(b) When an emphasis lies on the pronoun; *e.g.*

**እርሱ፡ አላደረገውም፡ ኔ፤ አደረግሁት፡ እንጂ፡**

"He has not done it, but I have."

2. The third person singular and plural is used for demonstration; as is the reverse in the Latin and Greek; *e.g.*

**አሁን፡ ያልሆነ፡ እርሱ፡ ነው፡ ያልሆነ፡** "That which thou hast now been telling me, is the same with what I told thee."

3. The Separable Possessive Pronoun is used only when a stress is laid upon it; *e.g.* **ይህ፡ ቤት፡ የ፤ ነው፡** "This house is mine."

Cf. John xvii. 9, 10: **ያንተ፡ ነገሩ፡ ለእኔም፡ የሆነ፡ ሁሉ፡ እርሱ፡ ላንተ፡ ነው፡፡ ያንተውም፡ እርሱ፡ ለ፤ ነው፡** "For they are Thine. And all that is mine, the same is Thine; and Thine, the same is mine."

Where no such stress lies on the Possessive, Suffixes are used.

4. The Singular Masculine of both the *Demonstrative* Pronouns forms Adverbs, by the junction of Prepositions with the Genitive Case of those Pronouns. See Part II. Ch. V. 4. (b).

5. The *Interrogative* **ማን፡** "who?" "which?" "what?" is used for persons: it is made use of, also, for inanimate subjects in the phrase **ማን፡ ነው፡ ስሙ፡** or **ስሙ፡ ማን፡ ነው፡ (ማነው፡)** "What is his (its) name?" On the contrary, the Impersonal **ምን፡** is employed as a Personal Interrogative, by way of utter contempt, in the expression, **ምን፡ አባቱ፡** "What is his father?" Both these expressions are elliptical.

6. The Indefinite **ሁሉ፡**, which may be considered, as it is in the other Semitic languages, as a Noun, **ሁል፡** (هَلْ, كَلْ) with suffixes, assumes no other suffix in the singular than the suffixes masculine and feminine of the third person; but it takes all the suffixes of the plural: **ሁሉ፡ ሁልዋ፡ ሁላቸው፡ ሁላችሁ፡ ሁላችን፡፡**

7. When **ሁሉ፡** is absolute, it stands at the beginning of a sentence: when connected with Nouns or Participles, it follows them; *e.g.*

**ሁሉ፡ ሔደ፡** "All is gone."

**ሁሉን፡ አደረገ፡** "He has done all."

**ሰው፡ ሁሉ፡** "All men," "every man," "people in general," &c.

8. **ሁሉ**:, as subject of the sentence, and without any other suffixes, may have its verb either in the singular or in the plural: when connected with nouns or participles, or with other suffixes, the number and person of the verb are determined by those nouns, participles, or suffixes; *e.g.*

**ሁሉ፡ ደጠፋል፡** “All will (sing.) perish”; or,

**ሁሉ፡ ደጠፋሉ፡** “All will (plur.) perish.”

**ሁላችን፡ ባንድ ነን፡** “We are all together.”

**ነገሥታት፡ ሁሉ፡ ተሰበሰቡ፡ ሁላቸውም፡ ተዋጉ፡** “All the kings were assembled together, and all of them engaged in war.”

9. **አንድኛ**፡ “some,” “something,” “any thing”; with negation, “nothing”; *e.g.*

**አንድኛን፡ ሰጠው፡** “Give him something.”

**አንድኛን፡ አልተቀበልሁም፡** “I received nothing.”

10. **አያሌ**፡ signifies an indefinite number or quantity; *e.g.*

**አይሌ፡ ሰዎች፡ ያምኑትል፡ አያሌ፡ ገን፡ ደጠራጠረበትል፡**

“Some men believe; others doubt it.”

When it is predicate, it signifies a large quantity:

**ከብቱ፡ አያሌ፡ ነው፡** “His property is considerable.”

11. In order to express Reciprocity, the Abyssinians make use of the form **እርሱ፡ በርሱ**—, with the Plural Suffixes **ፊችን፡** **ፊችሁ፡** and **ፊችው፡** and a Reciprocativ or other Verb; *e.g.*

**እርሱ፡ በርሱችሁ፡ ተዋደዱ፡** “Love one another!”

12. An Indefinite Pronoun is **አንተን**፡ which signifies, “The what’s his name.” Gr. *ὁ θεῖνα*; French, *chose*; German, *Dingerich*; *e.g.*

**አንተን፡ አይሔድም፡** “The what’s his name does not go.”

## CHAP. VII.

### ON THE AFFIXED PRONOUNS.

1. As to their position, that is determined, the Nominal Suffixes being joined to the final letter of the Noun (or Adverb); the verbal to the last radical of the Verb, or to the Verbal Afformative. Adjectives do not assume suffixes, except when considered as Substantives.

2. The Nominal Suffixes are to be considered as possessive; the verbal ones as objective; *e.g.*

**ልጄ፡** “My child.”

**መታኝ፡** “He struck me.”

Adverbs with Suffixes are treated by them as Substantives, the nominal Suffixes being joined to them; *e.g.*

**በላይ:** "over me."

3. Concerning the Verbal Suffixes, enough has been said in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV. sect. V. We add here, that the suffix of the first pronoun in the singular is sometimes used pleonastically; *e.g.*

**ሐይሁኝ:** "I am gone."

## CHAP. VIII.

### CONSTRUCTION OF THE VERB.

Having discussed the nature and use of the Verb, and its various parts, rather extensively in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV., we need not here go through it at full length; but shall offer, in the first place, such additional remarks on the Moods, Tenses, and Persons, as are deemed necessary; and, in the second place, to show the agreement of one verb with another, and of the verb with the other parts of speech.

#### SECTION I.

##### *On the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.*

1. The following Tenses are used for the *past* time: the Simple Preterite of the Indicative, the Compound Preterite of the Contingent, and the Compound Preterite of the Constructive.

(a) The Simple Preterite of the Indicative is used,

α. For the Perfect Tense; *e.g.*

**እንገደ: መጣ:** "A stranger has arrived."

**ሕዝቡ: ተሰበሰቡ:** "The people have gathered themselves together."

β. For the Historical Tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect; *e.g.*

**ከተረረሞ: በወረደ: ጊዜ: ተከተሉት: ብዙ: አሕዛብ:**

"And when he descended from the mountain, many people followed him."

Matt. viii. 1.

**ተከላከለ: ከፈጸመ: በኋላ: ከዚያ: አለፈ:**

"When he had finished his command, he passed over from thence."

Matt. xi. 1.

γ. For the Present or Immediate Future, in a very few instances. So when visitors courteously ask leave to go, they do it by saying: **ሐይሁ:** "I am gone," *i.e.* "If you allow me, I go now." Or when a person is

frequently called, and does not come, he at last answers : መፅሁ፡ መፅሁ፡ "I come ! I come !"

δ. With Conjunction Prefixes, it serves for the Potential and Optative Moods.—See Sect. II. §. 5. and Isa. i. 9.

(b) The Compound Preterite of the Contingent is used,

α. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Indicative ; *e.g.*

እኔ፡ ሳልመጣ፡ እርሳቸው፡ ደበሉ፡ ነበሩ፡ "Before I came, they had been eating."

β. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Potential Mood :

ብትለምነው፡ ቢሰጥህ፡ ነበረ፡ "If thou wouldst ask him, he would give thee."

ደህን፡ ካላደረግህ፡ ብወድህ፡ ነበርህ፡ "If thou hadst not done this, I should have loved thee."

(c) The Compound Preterite of the Constructive is used chiefly for the Pluperfect, and sometimes for the Imperfect of the Indicative ; *e.g.*

ሰጥቼ፡ ነበርሁ፡ "I had given."

2. Tenses used for the *Present*, are, the Present of the Indicative ; the Second, or Aoristic Constructive ; and the Contingent with Conjunctions.

(a) The Present Indicative and the Aoristic Constructive are both used for the Present Indicative ; *e.g.*

እርሱ፡ ተጫውትዋል፡ እኔ፡ ዝም፡ እላለሁ፡

"Whereas he is talking, I keep silence."

(b) The Present Indicative is used for both the Present and the Future tenses : the Aoristic Constructive serves especially for an action, condition, state, or suffering, which *continues* ; and therefore, although it is more frequently used for the Present, it is likewise made use of for the Perfect. This peculiarity of both these forms is owing to the Auxiliary Verb Substantive አለ፡ with which they are composed.

(c) The Simple Contingent Mood serves for the Present as well as for the Future Tenses, when connected with Particles ; *e.g.* the Participles የመጣ፡ "he that comes ;" ሲመጣ፡ "when he comes ;" ሳይመጣ፡ "before he comes ;" Negative assertions : አይመጣም፡ "he comes not," "will not come ;" Conditional expressions : ቢጨርስ፡ "if he end," or "if he ends ;" Final and referential : እንደጽፍ፡ "that he writes" or "write ;" Final : ሊወጣ፡ ተነሣ፡ "he rose to go out," where it is for an Infinitive ; ወንድሙን፡ ደረደ፡ ዘንድ፡ ሐደ፡ "He went to assist (that he might assist) his brother."

3. The *Future* time is generally expressed by the same forms which serve for the Present, except the Aoristic Constructive. Vide 2. a.—In p. 66 of this work we pointed out another mode of a decidedly future form; besides which they make use of the Contingent with አለ: or with ይሆናል: The one is found in the negative expression, Ezek. xvii. 9 : ስረ: ይመዘክ: የለምን: ፍረውስ: የቀረጥ: የለምን: “Shall not its root be extracted; and its fruit, shall it not be cut off.” But these two latter forms are not confined to the Future: they are also used for the Present Tense.

## SECTION II.

### *On the Moods of the Amharic Verb.*

On this head, we shall add but little to what has been stated Chap. IV. of the preceding part, and in the preceding Section of this Chapter.

1. The *Contingent* serves for the Indicative, Subjunctive, Potential, and Participial Moods; as is shown in the preceding Section.

2. The *Subjunctive* expresses a desire, or an indirect request, order, command, or obligation.—See p. 72.

3. The Infinitive, as Verbal Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes; but relates to and acts upon other nouns in a verbal capacity; e.g.

ለንጉሥ: መተዘዘ: “My obeying the King,” “my being obedient to the King.”

It is, however, likewise constructed as a Noun; e.g.

የክርስቲስ: መምጣት: “The coming of Christ.”

ፍረን: ለማፍራት: ተተከለች: “In order to bear fruit was it planted.”

4. The Participles are of the same character, partaking of the nature of Adjectives (as the Infinitive does of the nature of Nouns), and of the Verb, as has been shown in the preceding Part, pp. 72, 73. The Simple forms, however, have more of a nominal; the Augmented forms more of a verbal character. The Augmented forms are verbally flexible through all the persons; besides their being capable of receiving Prepositions, and the Accusative ን: marking them as Nouns. ልቡ: የጸና: ሰው: አንድ: ጊዜ: ያለውን: ነገር: መለወጥ: አይወድም: “A man of a *determined* character does not like to change his word *which* he once has spoken. ፍረውን: ለቀማ: ደስ: ያለዋል: ዘርን: ከሚዘሩት: ያልቀ: “The gatherer of the fruit rejoices, more than those that sowed the seed.”

5. There is in the Amharic Language no peculiar form for the Optative Mood: they express it by circumscription; e.g.

ቢሆንስ: ባስተማርህኝ: በወደድሁ: “If it had been, if thou hadst instructed me, I should have liked it.”

## SECTION III.

*Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the Sentence.*

1. The Amharic Verb having all the personal forms connected with it, it is capable of including the subject in itself; *e.g.*

**ጠበቀ:** "he observed."

**መታህ:** "thou hast beaten."

And by the aid of Suffixed Pronouns and Prepositions, it is further capable of expressing a whole sentence in itself; *e.g.*

**መጣብህ:** "He came upon thee."

**መታህወ:** "Thou hast struck him."

2. But when, as is more usual, the subject is separate from the Verb, the latter should agree with it in gender, number, and person; *e.g.*

**ይህች ሴት አትሔድም:** "This woman does not go."

**ሉላልቱ ተከተሉት:**

"His servants followed him."

3. Collective Nouns, however, which admit of a Plural, have the Verb sometimes in the Singular, sometimes in the Plural: *e.g.*

**ሕዝቡ ተሰበሰቡ:** "The people gathered itself together"; or

**ሕዝብ ተሰበሰቡ:** "The people gathered themselves together."

4. When there are more than one subject in a sentence, the Verb stands either in the Third Person of the Plural, or it is determined by what is considered as the chief subject; *e.g.*

**ወንድና ሴት መጣ:**

"Male and female came."

**ንጉሥና ሠራዊቱ ተመቱ:** "The king and his army were beaten."

When the person who is addressed forms one of the subjects, the Verb follows in the Second Person Plural; *e.g.*

**ኪደን፣ ንበሩም፣ አንተም፣ ልትማሩ፣ ናችሁ:**

"Kiddan, Gabru, and thou, (you) are to learn."

When the speaker is included, the Verb is to be in the First Person Plural:

**እርሳትወና እኛ ተለየን:** "They and we are separated."

5. When the subject consists of several Infinitives, the number is not multiplied, and the Verb is used in the singular; *e.g.*

**መማርና መስራት ይጠቅማል:** "Learning and working is useful."

But when the subject consists of several Participles, which are considered as Nouns, the Verb must be in the plural; *e.g.*

**ሰራዊቱና ገደደ መጡበት:** "A thief and a murderer came upon him."

6. Active and Transitive Verbs have their objects in the Accusative

A A



Case: see Ch. III. 10. Transitive and Causative Verbs may have a double Accusative; *e.g.*

**መልእክትን፡ አስጻፈው፡** "He caused him to write a letter."

But as these Verbs may sometimes be used as Intransitive, the use of Prepositions is frequently applied; *e.g.*

**ፈርደበት፡** "He judged *over* (or *against*) him."

**ጻፈበት፡** "He wrote *in* it."

**ሰውን፡ አስመጣለት፡** "He caused a man to come *for* (or *to*) him."

7. Intransitive Verbs are generally connected with their objects by Prepositions; *e.g.*

**በቤት፡ ነበረ፡** "He was in the house."

**ወደገረ፡ ሔደ፡** "He went to his country."

**በወምበረ፡ ተቀመጠ፡** "He sat upon his chair."

8. When the object of the sentence is another Verb, that is expressed by the Infinitive, or by the Contingent with Conjunctions; *e.g.*

**መማር፡ ይወዳል፡** "He likes to learn"; or,

**ይማር፡ ዘንድ፡ ይወዳል፡** "He likes that he may learn."

**መድገም፡ ያውቃል፡** "He can read."

9. The reigning Verb should be always at the end of the sentence, whether the object be simple, or complex, or compound; *e.g.*

**ሰው፡ ያልወደደውን፡ ነገር፡ አያደርገም፡**

"What man does not like, he will not perform."

**እግዚአብሔር፡ በትእዛዙ፡ የከለከለውን፡ ነገር፡ ሰው፡ ያደርጋል፡**

"What God in His law has prohibited, man does commit."

**በእግዚአብሔር፡ ቃል፡ እናምን፡ ዘንድ፡ በጌጢአታችንም፡ አዘነን፡ የሱስ፡ ክርስቲስ፡ የሰራውን፡ መድኃኒት፡ በሃይማኖት፡ እንቀበል፡ ዘንድ፡ ወንጌል፡ ያስተምረናል፡** "The Gospel teaches us to believe in the Word of God, to repent of our sins, and to receive in faith the Salvation which Christ has wrought out for us."

## CHAP. IX.

### CONSTRUCTION OF THE REMAINING PARTS OF SPEECH.

As the doctrine of the Particles, *i.e.* Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections, has been pretty fully exhibited in the Etymological Part, Ch. V. to Ch. VIII., we do not think it necessary to add any more: and so we finish here the Amharic Grammar, adding only a few Specimens of Common Conversation, and a few Exercises.

## PART IV.

## SOME SPECIMENS OF CONVERSATION,

AND

## A FEW EXERCISES.

## 1. CONVERSATIONAL MODES OF SALUTATION.

IN conversation, the Abyssinians are very polite towards each other, without using quite such a bombastic style as is common among the Arabs and other Eastern nations. When speaking of the Pronouns and under the Verb, we have mentioned two honorific distinctions for the second person in the singular, and that they speak of a third person of respect in the plural. A neglect of these distinctions is overlooked in foreigners, whilst learning their language; but amongst themselves it is taken as an offence, except with intimate friends, and in a few other instances. In saluting, the various times of the day, the state of health, frequency of intercourse, season of the year, and some other circumstances, are to be regarded as determining the mode of address.

As for the time of the day when persons meet, four times are distinguished, for which four separate Verbs are used; viz. (a) *The morning*, until the sun has finished half his course from the horizon to the meridian, i.e. between nine and ten o'clock A.M. During this time, when meeting, the verb አደረ: "to spend the night," "to rest," is used in the Preterite: when parting, the verb ረፈደ: "to spend the forenoon," አስረፈደ: "to make spend the forenoon," or ዋለ: "to spend (አዋለ: "to make spend) the middle of the day," in the Imperative or Subjunctive Mood. (b) *The forenoon*, from about nine to eleven o'clock A.M. At meeting, they salute each other with the verb ረፈደ: "to spend the forenoon," in the Preterite: when parting, with the Verb ዋለ: or አዋለ: (c) *Noon and afternoon*, to sun-set. When meeting, they use ዋለ: in the Preterite: when parting before five P.M., አዋለ: when after five, the Subjunctive of አስመሽ: "to make pass the evening," or Imperative or Subjunctive of መሽ: "to pass the evening." (d) *Evening and night*, from sun-set to the first break of the day. When meeting, the Preterite of መሽ: when parting, either the Subjunctive or the Imperative of አደረ: "to pass the night," "to rest," or Subjunctive of አሳደረ: "to make pass the night," &c, is used.

ይመር: "May He (i.e. God) be gracious!" and ይፈወስ: "May He heal," "restore!" both with Suffixes, is used for addressing sick persons. The former wish also is used when a person sneezes. ገገ: in the Preterite, is used when meeting a person who has newly arrived at the place: in the

Subjunctive with Suffixes, when parting with a person who goes to another country. **ሰነብ**: "to pass the time from one interview to another," is used in the Preterite, when persons meet who have not seen each other for some time. **አሰነብ**: "to make pass &c., is used at parting, when they do not expect to meet again for a considerable time. Then they add, **ያገኙን**: "May He bring us together again!" **ከረመ**: "to pass the rainy season," and **አስከረመ**: its transitive, is used in the same manner.

The following Specimens of Conversation will illustrate the preceding remarks. We choose the imaginary meeting of the servant Gabru, with his master Kiddana Maryam, after his return from an errand to a friend, Aito Malku, who lives in a distant part of the country. The meeting is supposed to take place in the morning.

K. M. **በደህፍ ገህን ገብረ**:

Hast thou arrived in health (safely &c.), Gabru?

G. **እግዚአብሔር ይመስገን፡፡  
ደህፍ ሰነብን ጌታው፡፡**

God be praised! Have you, master, been well all the time since I saw you last?

K. M. **እግዚአብሔር ይመስገን፡፡  
ደህፍ ሰነብህን አንተ**:

Thank God! Hast thou been all the time well?

G. **እግዚአብሔር ይመስገን፡፡  
እርሰዋን ደህፍ ነው**:

Thanks to God! Are you well?

K. M. **እግዚአብሔር ይመስገን፡፡  
ደህፍ ነን፡፡ መንገድህን  
ቀንተ ነበረ**:

Thanks to God! I am well. Hast thou had a good journey?

G. **መንገዱ ቀኖ፡፡ ከዚህ ተነ  
ሠቼ በሶስት ቀን ደረሰሁኝ፡፡  
ከዚያም አንድ ቀን ውሏል፡፡  
ተመለስሁኝ በሁለት ቀንም  
ተኩል ገባሁኝ**:

I had a good journey. I arrived there in three days after I had started from hence, and staying there one day, I returned, and in two days and a half arrived here.

K. M. **ምንድር ይላሉ አይተ፡፡  
መልኩ፡፡**

What does Aito Malku say?

G. **ደህፍሉን ደህፍሉን ደህ  
ፍሉን ደህፍ ሰነብን እጅጉን፡፡  
ደህፍ ነዋን ደህፍ ከረመን፡፡  
ወደጅነቱ ሰማይ፡፡ ምድር፡፡  
የሀል፡፡ ፍት አሉ፡፡ እርሰዋም፡፡  
የሰደዱትን ነገር ሰጠኝሃል**:

"Are you well? Are you well? Are you well? Have you been quite well since our last interview? Are you well? Have you passed the rainy season well? My friendship amounts to heaven and earth," he said. — What you sent to him

እጅግም፡ ደስ፡ አሉበት። እግ  
ዚአብሔር፡ ይስጠዎ፡ እግዚአብ  
ሔር፡ ይስጠዎ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡  
ያመስግንዎ፡ አሉ፡

K. M. ጉደዩሳ።

G. እሺ፡ አድርገዋለሁ፡ አሉ።

K. M. በጎ። አሁንም፡ ሞሳ  
ህን፡ በልተህ፡ ወደ፡ ታመመች፡  
ሲት፡ ወደ፡ ወለተ፡ ገብርኤል፡  
ሐድድ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ይማ  
ርሽ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ይፈውስሽ፡  
ዛሬ፡ ጥቂት፡ አልቀለልሽምን፡  
በልልኝ።

G. እሺ። ሐድሁኝ፡

K. M. እሺ። በደህ፡ ያው  
ለህ።

G. በደህ፡ ያውሉ፡ (ዋሉ፡)

I delivered, and he was very glad of it, and said, "May God give it (re-ward) you! May God give it you! May God glorify you!" (i.e. I am very much obliged to you.)

But how is (what did he say to) my request?

He agreed to do it.

Very well. Now eat thy dinner, and go to Wallela Gabriel, a sick woman, and (give her my respects, and tell her that I sympathize with her in her illness) say for me, "May God have mercy on thee, and restore thee! Dost thou not feel a little better to-day?"

Very well. I go then.

Very well. (Mayest thou spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

(May you spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

TASFU, another servant, enters, announcing a visitor.

Tasfu. አይቶ፡ ወልደ፡ ድንግል፡  
አሉ። ሊገቡን።

There is Aito Walda Dengel:  
Shall he come in?

K. M. እሺ። ይገቡ።

Yes, let him come.

On entering, KIDDANA MARYAM attempts to rise; but AITO WALDA DENGEL hastens to prevent it; saying, ይኑሩ፡ ይኑሩ፡ "Remain remain!" or as usual:

በእግዚአብሔር፡ በማርያም።

By God! by Mary! (i.e. Do not rise.)

W. D. እንዴት፡ አደሩ፡

How have you passed the night?

K. M. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስ  
ገን። ደህ፡ አደሩን፡

Thank God! Have you passed the night well?

W. D. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስ  
ገን። ደህ፡ ረፈደን፡

Thank God! Have you passed the forenoon well?

K. M. እገዛአብሔር፡ ደመሰ  
ሰገን፡ እጅጉን፡ ደህና፡ ረፈደ፡

Thanks to God! Have you passed  
the forenoon very well?

W. D. እገዛአብሔር፡ ደመሰ  
ገን፡ ምሽተዎና፡ ልጆችዎ፡ ሁ  
ሉ፡ ደህና፡ ናቸው፡

Thank God! Are your wife and  
all your children well?

K. M. እገዛአብሔር፡ ደመሰ  
ገን፡ ምሽቲ፡ ዛሬ፡ ታማላች፡

Thank God! My wife is poorly  
to-day.

W. D. አይ፡ ሐማማቸው፡  
ምንድር፡ ነው፡

Ah! What is her complaint?

K. M. ሆድዋ፡ ያማታል፡

She has pain in the bowels.

W. D. ተሰፈ፡

Tasfu!

T. አቤት፡

Sir!

W. D. እገዛአብሔር፡ ደማረ  
ዎ፡ እገዛአብሔር፡ ይፈውሳዎ፡  
በልልኝ፡ እመቤትህን፡

Speak to thy mistress in my be-  
half; saying, "May God have mercy  
on you! May God restore you!"

T. አሁን፡ ጥቂት፡ ይቀለጃል፡  
ይላሉ፡

She says that she feels now a  
little better.

W. D. እንጊደህ፡ ያውቁኝ፡  
ባልደረገዎንም፡ ይሰጡኝ፡

Henceforth, know me (as your  
friend), and give me a Baldaraba\*  
(a man that introduces me to you).

K. M. አሺ፡ አንተ፡ ተሰፈ፡  
አይተ፡ ወልደ፡ ድንገል፡ በመጡ፡  
ወትር፡ አድርሳቸው፡

Very well. Thou, Tasfu, when-  
ever Aito Walda Dengel comes, do  
thou introduce him.

W. D. ሔድሁኝ፡

I go then.

K. M. አሺ፡ በደህና፡ ያውሉ፡

Very well. May He make you  
spend the middle of the day well  
i.e. Good bye!

W. D. በደህና፡ ያውሉ፡

May He make you spend the &c.

K. M. አመን፡

Amen!

\* See ባልደረገ፡ in the Dictionary.

## 2. A FEW EXERCISES.

## SALVATION.

(See Amharic Spelling Book, p. 20.)

**አሁንስ፡ እንደህ፡ ሲሆን፡** Now, as it is thus, all men having  
**ሰውም፡ ሁሉ፡ እግዚአብሔርን፡** by their sins offended God, and fallen  
**በኃጢአቱ፡ በድሎታል፡ ከእግ**  
**ዚአብሔር፡ ፍርድ፡ ከዘላለም**  
**ም፡ ኩነኔ፡ በታች፡ ሲኖር፡ እግዚ**  
**አብሔር፡ ለላውን፡ የጸጋውን፡** when He in His mercy gave His  
**መንገድ፡ ከፈተል፡ በታላቅ፡**  
**ምህረቱ፡ የተወደደውን፡ ልጁን፡**  
**በፍ፡ ፈንታ፡ ቤዛ፡ አድርጎ፡ በሰ**  
**ጠው፡ ጊዜ፡**

## BEST USE OF GEOGRAPHY.

(See Preface to the Amharic Geography.)

**ይህችን፡ በጣም፡ ብትማር፡** If thou learn this (Geography)  
**በቤት፡ ተቀምጠህ፡ ወደ፡ ረቅ፡** perfectly, thou wilt, even whilst re-  
**አገር፡ እንደሚሔድ፡ ሰው፡ ትሆ**  
**ናለህ፡ በቀደምም፡ ስማቸውን፡** man that goes into a distant coun-  
**እንኳ፡ ያልሰማህውን፡ አሕዛብ፡**  
**መኖርያቸውን፡ ጠባያቸውንም፡** thy didst not hear before, thou  
**ስራቸውንም፡ ንብረታቸውንም፡** wilt find here their residences, their  
**ከዚህ፡ ታገኛለህ፡ ሁላቸውም፡**  
**ወንድሞችህ፡ ናቸው፡ ሁላቸ**  
**ውም፡ ታላቆችና፡ ታናሾች፡ ብል**  
**ሃተኞችና፡ አራዊትም፡ በጎችና፡**  
**ክፍችም፡ ዘመዶችህ፡ ያባትህ፡**  
**ያደም፡ ልጆች፡ እወቃቸው፡ ተ**  
**ማርባቸውም፡ ስራቸውንም፡**  
**መርመር፡ የምታገኝባቸውንም፡**  
**በጎ፡ ነገር፡ ጠብቅ፡ ከክፉም፡**  
**ሽሽ፡ ሁላቸውንም፡ ወደድ፡**  
**ነፍስህን፡ ትወድ፡ ዘንድ፡ እግዚ**  
**አብሔር፡ እንደሚባል፡ ከሁሉም፡**  
**ይልቅ፡ እንደህ፡ ብለህ፡ ነፍስህን፡** above all things, ask thyself, saying,

ጥዋቅ። እግዚአብሔር፡ ስለ፡ “Wherefore has God created me?  
 ምንድር፡ ፈጠረኝ። የእግዚአ “What is the will of God with me?  
 ብሔርም፡ ፈቃድ፡ በኔ፡ ምንድር፡ “and how do I accomplish the will  
 ነው። እኔም፡ እንደኩ፡ እፈጽማ “of God? What is the will of God  
 ለሁ፡ የእግዚአብሔርን፡ ፈቃድ። “concerning my people and nation?  
 ምንድር፡ ነው፡ የእግዚአብሔር፡ “And we, the people of Abyssinia,  
 ፈቃድ፡ በሕዝቡ፡ በወገኖቹም። “do we perform what God requires  
 እኛም፡ የሐበኝ፡ ሰዎች፡ እግዚ “us to do? And if we have not  
 አብሔር፡ የሚሻብን፡ እናደርገዋ “done it, what is our duty henceforth  
 ለንን። ባላደረግነውም፡ ምን፡ “to do?” If thou askest in this  
 ደግሣል፡ እንጊደህ፡ እናደርገ፡ manner, the Holy Scriptures will  
 ዘንድ። እንደሁም፡ ብትጠይቅ፡ satisfactorily answer thee. Hear  
 መጽሐፍ፡ ቅዱስ፡ በጣም፡ ይመ “them, and follow them!  
 ልስልሃል። እርሱንም፡ ስማ፡  
 ተከተለውም።

THE END.

LONDON :

PRINTED BY RICHARD WATTS, CROWN COURT, TEMPLE BAR.





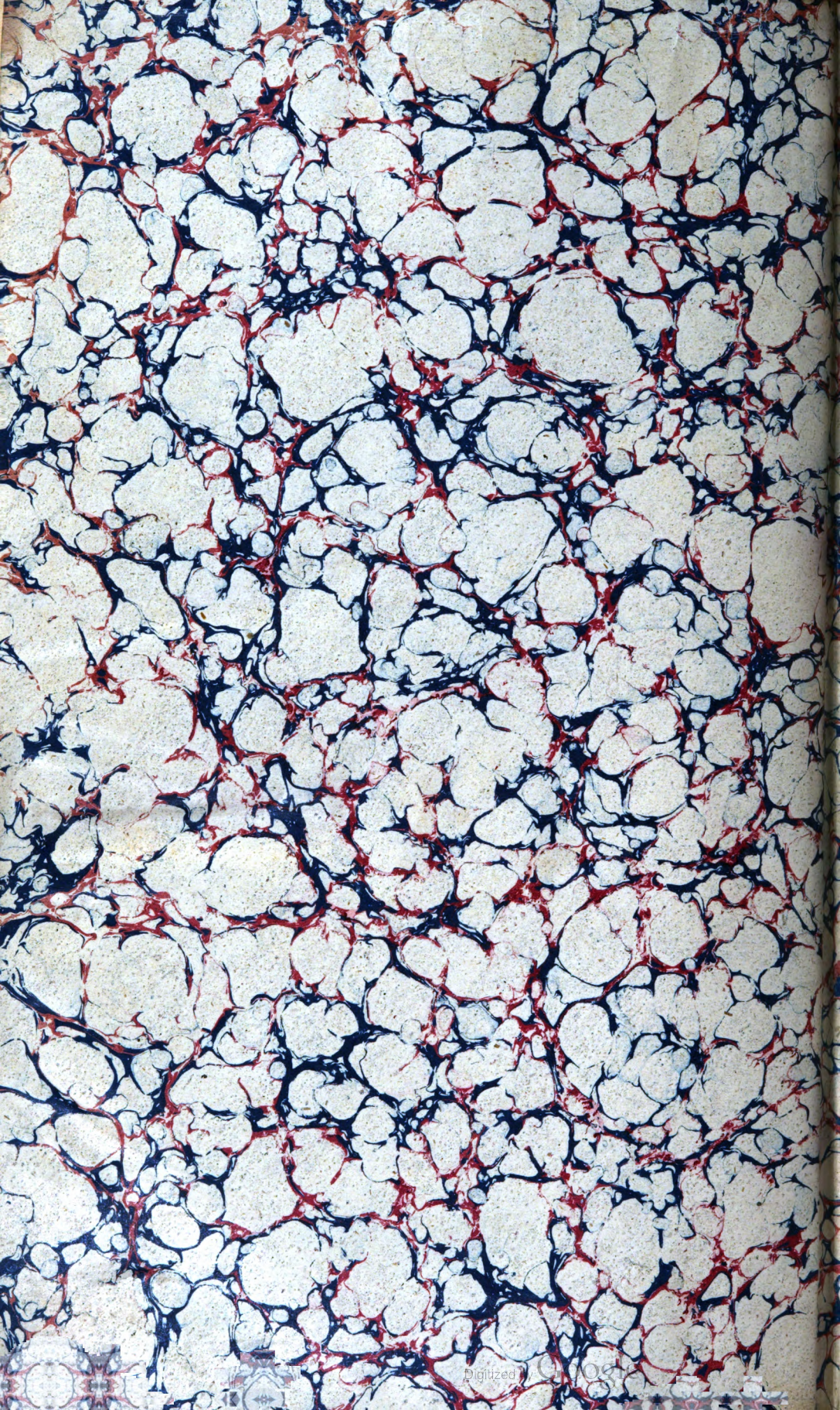


Österreichische Nationalbibliothek

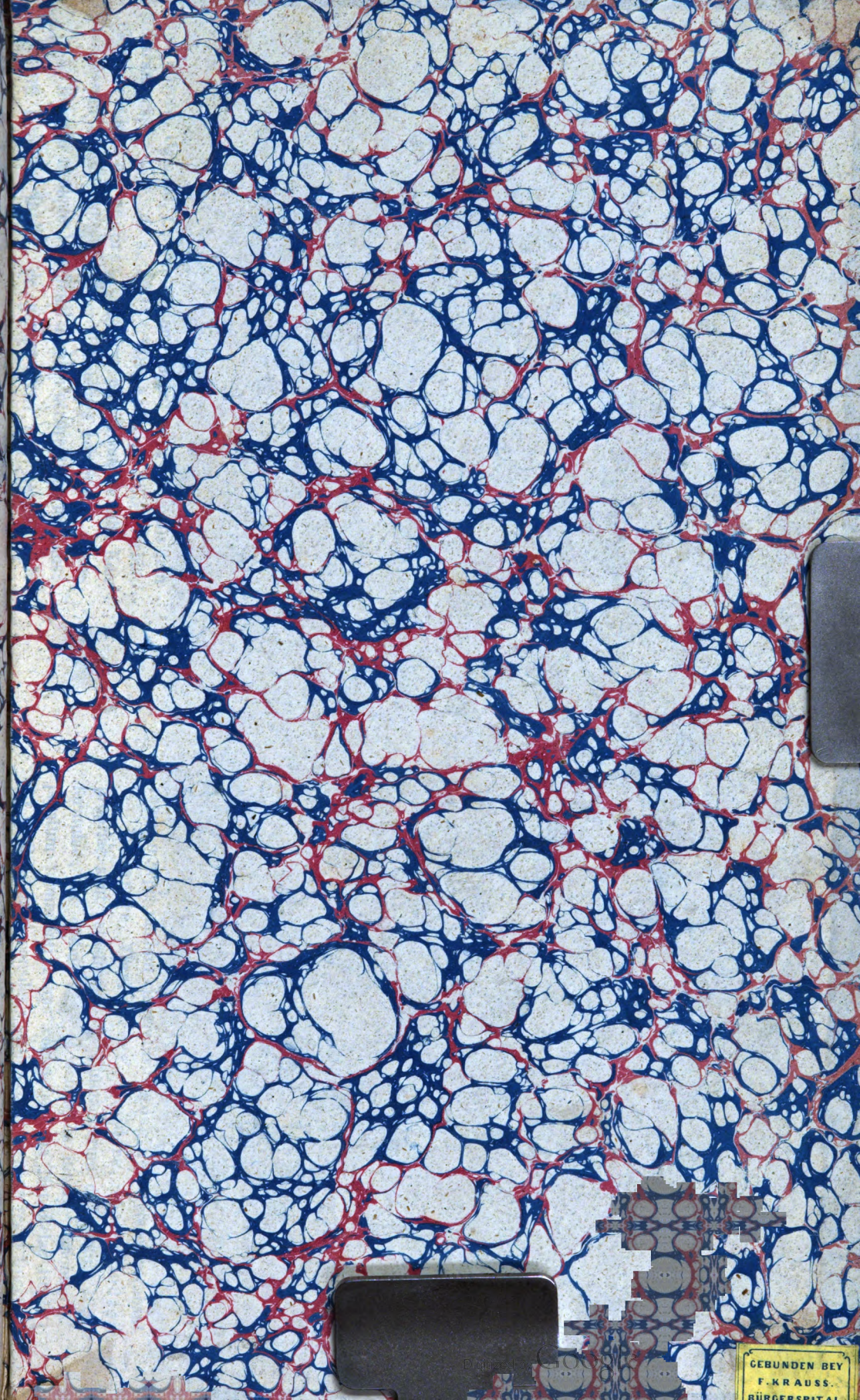


+Z174563709









GEBUNDEN BEY  
F. KRAUSS.  
BÜRGERSPITAL



